

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re application of: Ahmed HAMDY et al. : Attorney Docket No. 055112-5004-US
Serial No.: Not yet assigned :
Filed: Concurrently herewith :
For: METHODS OF TREATING CHRONIC :
LYMPHOCYTIC LEUKEMIA AND :
SMALL LYMPHOCYTIC LEUKEMIA :
USING A BTK INHIBITOR :

Commissioner for Patents
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Prior to examination, please amend the above-referenced application as follows:

Amendments to the Specification begin on page 2 of this paper;

Amendments to the Abstract begin on page 3 of this paper;

Amendments to the Claims begin on page 4 of this paper;

Remarks begin on page 9 of this paper.

AMENDMENTS TO THE SPECIFICATION

In the Specification:

Please add the following paragraph directly under the title:

CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a U.S. National Phase Application under 35 U.S.C. 371 claiming priority to International Application No. PCT/IB2015/000645 filed January 21, 2015, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/929,742, filed January 21, 2014 and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/974,665 filed April 3, 2014 and U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/035,777 filed August 11, 2014, wherein the entire contents of each application are incorporated herein by reference in their entireties.

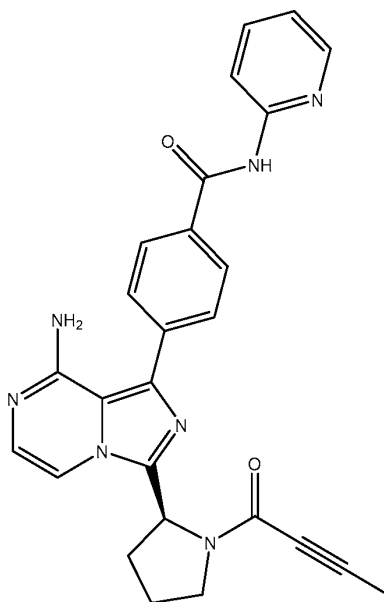
AMENDMENTS TO THE ABSTRACT

Please move the Abstract from the first page of the published international application (International Publication No. WO 2015/110923) to the end of the present application, immediately following the claims.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CLAIMS

Please amend the claims as follows:

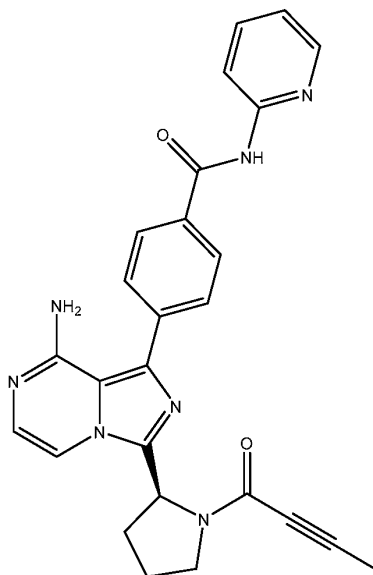
1. (Currently amended) A method of treating chronic lymphocytic leukemia (CLL) or small lymphocytic leukemia (SLL) comprising the step of orally administering, to a human in need thereof, the Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (II):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, or hydrate thereof.

2. (Original) The method of Claim 1, wherein the BTK inhibitor is administered once daily at a dose selected from the group consisting of 100 mg, 175 mg, 250 mg, and 400 mg.
3. (Original) The method of Claim 1, wherein the BTK inhibitor is administered twice daily at a dose of 100 mg.
4. (Currently amended) The method of Claim 1, wherein the CLL increases monocytes and NK cells in peripheral blood after treatment with Formula (II) for a period selected from the group consisting of about 14 days, about 28 days, ~~or~~ and about 56 days.
5. (Currently amended) The method of Claim 1, wherein the CLL is selected from the group consisting of IgV_H mutation negative CLL, ZAP-70 positive CLL, ZAP-70 methylated at

- CpG3 CLL, CD38 positive CLL, CLL with a 17p13.1 (17p) deletion, CLL with a 11q22.3 (11q) deletion, CLL in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, CLL in a human presently suffering from platelet-mediated thrombosis, CLL in a human previously suffering from platelet-mediated thrombosis, ~~or~~ and combinations thereof.
6. (Original) The method of Claim 1, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anti-CD20 antibody selected from the group consisting of rituximab, obinutuzumab, ofatumumab, veltuzumab, tositumomab, ibritumomab, and fragments, derivatives, conjugates, variants, radioisotope-labeled complexes, and biosimilars thereof.
 7. (Currently amended) The method of Claim 1 ~~or Claim 6~~, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anticoagulant or antiplatelet active pharmaceutical ingredient.
 8. (Original) The method of Claim 7, wherein the anticoagulant or antiplatelet active pharmaceutical ingredient is selected from the group consisting of acenocoumarol, anagrelide, anagrelide hydrochloride, abciximab, aloxiprin, antithrombin, apixaban, argatroban, aspirin, aspirin with extended-release dipyridamole, beraprost, betrixaban, bivalirudin, carbasalate calcium, cilostazol, clopidogrel, clopidogrel bisulfate, cloricromen, dabigatran etexilate, darexaban, dalteparin, dalteparin sodium, defibrotide, dicumarol, diphenadione, dipyridamole, ditazole, desirudin, edoxaban, enoxaparin, enoxaparin sodium, eptifibatide, fondaparinux, fondaparinux sodium, heparin, heparin sodium, heparin calcium, idraparin, idraparin sodium, iloprost, indobufen, lepirudin, low molecular weight heparin, melagatran, nadroparin, otamixaban, parnaparin, phenindione, phenprocoumon, prasugrel, picotamide, prostacyclin, ramatroban, reviparin, rivaroxaban, sulodexide, terutroban, terutroban sodium, ticagrelor, ticlopidine, ticlopidine hydrochloride, tinzaparin, tinzaparin sodium, tirofiban, tirofiban hydrochloride, treprostinil, treprostinil sodium, triflusal, vorapaxar, warfarin, warfarin sodium, ximelagatran, salts thereof, solvates thereof, hydrates thereof, and combinations thereof.
 9. (Currently amended) A method of treating a hematological malignancy in a human comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (II):



- or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, hydrate, or solvate thereof, and wherein the hematological malignancy is selected from the group consisting of non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL), diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL), follicular lymphoma (FL), mantle cell lymphoma (MCL), Hodgkin's lymphoma, B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (B-ALL), Burkitt's lymphoma, Waldenström's macroglobulinemia (WM), Burkitt's lymphoma, multiple myeloma, ~~or~~ and myelofibrosis
10. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the BTK inhibitor is administered once daily at a dose selected from the group consisting of 100 mg, 175 mg, 250 mg, and 400 mg.
 11. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the BTK inhibitor is administered twice daily at a dose of 100 mg.
 12. (Currently amended) The method of Claim 9, wherein the hematological malignancy increases monocytes and NK cells in peripheral blood after treatment with Formula (II) for a period selected from the group consisting of about 14 days, about 28 days, ~~or~~ and about 56 days.
 13. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the NHL is selected from the group consisting of indolent NHL and aggressive NHL.
 14. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the DLBCL is selected from the group consisting of activated B-cell like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL-ABC) and

- germinal center B-cell like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma (DLBCL-GCB).
15. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the MCL is selected from the group consisting of mantle zone MCL, nodular MCL, diffuse MCL, and blastoid MCL.
 16. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the B-ALL is selected from the group consisting of early pre-B cell B-ALL, pre-B cell B-ALL, and mature B cell B-ALL.
 17. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the Burkitt's lymphoma is selected from the group consisting of sporadic Burkitt's lymphoma, endemic Burkitt's lymphoma, and human immunodeficiency virus-associated Burkitt's lymphoma.
 18. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the multiple myeloma is selected from the group consisting of hyperdiploid multiple myeloma and non-hyperdiploid multiple myeloma.
 19. (Original) The method of Claim 9, wherein the myelofibrosis is selected from the group consisting of primary myelofibrosis, myelofibrosis secondary to polycythemia vera, and myelofibrosis secondary to essential thrombocythaemia.
 20. (Original) The method of Claim 9, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anti-CD20 antibody selected from the group consisting of rituximab, obinutuzumab, ofatumumab, veltuzumab, tositumomab, ibritumomab, and fragments, derivatives, conjugates, variants, radioisotope-labeled complexes, and biosimilars thereof.
 21. (Currently amended) The method of Claim 9 ~~or Claim 20~~, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anticoagulant or antiplatelet active pharmaceutical ingredient.
 22. (Original) The method of Claim 21, wherein the anticoagulant or antiplatelet active pharmaceutical ingredient is selected from the group consisting of acenocoumarol, anagrelide, anagrelide hydrochloride, abciximab, aloxiprin, antithrombin, apixaban, argatroban, aspirin, aspirin with extended-release dipyridamole, beraprost, betrixaban, bivalirudin, carbasalate calcium, cilostazol, clopidogrel, clopidogrel bisulfate, cloricromen, dabigatran etexilate, darexaban, dalteparin, dalteparin sodium, defibrotide, dicumarol, diphenadione, dipyridamole, ditazole, desirudin, edoxaban, enoxaparin,

enoxaparin sodium, eptifibatide, fondaparinux, fondaparinux sodium, heparin, heparin sodium, heparin calcium, idraparinux, idraparinux sodium, iloprost, indobufen, lepirudin, low molecular weight heparin, melagatran, nadroparin, otamixaban, parnaparin, phenindione, phenprocoumon, prasugrel, picotamide, prostacyclin, ramatroban, reviparin, rivaroxaban, sulodexide, terutroban, terutroban sodium, ticagrelor, ticlopidine, ticlopidine hydrochloride, tinzaparin, tinzaparin sodium, tirofiban, tirofiban hydrochloride, treprostinil, treprostinil sodium, triflusal, vorapaxar, warfarin, warfarin sodium, ximelagatran, salts thereof, solvates thereof, hydrates thereof, and combinations thereof.

REMARKS

Applicants have added the first paragraph beneath the title of the application, beginning with the heading “CROSS-REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS” section of the Specification, to incorporate reference to the parent and priority applications.

Applicants have also requested that the Abstract be moved from the first page of the published international application to the end of the application to conform to U.S. patent application format.

Further, by way of this amendment, claims 7 and 21 have been amended to remove multiple dependencies and claims 1, 4, 5, 9 and 12 have been amended to correct minor typographical errors.

Applicants acknowledge that no new matter has been added by way of this Amendment.

CONCLUSION

In view of the foregoing remarks, Applicants respectfully request the Examiner’s timely consideration and examination of this application.

Although Applicants believe that no fee is necessary for the filing of this Preliminary Amendment, the Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees or any deficiencies or credit any overpayments in connection with this Amendment to Deposit Account 50-0310 (055112-5004-US).

Respectfully submitted,

DATED: 07/20/2016

/Frederick G. Vogt/
Frederick G. Vogt
Reg. No. 70115
MORGAN, LEWIS & BOCKIUS LLP
1701 Market Street
Philadelphia, PA 19103
Telephone: 215.963.4608
Facsimile: 215.963.5001

Electronic Patent Application Fee Transmittal				
Application Number:				
Filing Date:				
Title of Invention:		Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:		Ahmed Hamdy		
Filer:		Frederick Vogt		
Attorney Docket Number:		055112-5004-US		
Filed as Large Entity				
Filing Fees for U.S. National Stage under 35 USC 371				
Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Basic Filing:				
National Stage Fee	1631	1	280	280
National Stage Search - all other cases	1632	1	600	600
National Stage Exam - all other cases	1633	1	720	720
Pages:				
Natl Stage Appl Sz fee per 50 pgs >100	1681	2	400	800
Claims:				
Claims in excess of 20	1615	2	80	160
Miscellaneous-Filing:				

Description	Fee Code	Quantity	Amount	Sub-Total in USD(\$)
Oath/Decl > 30 Mos From 371 commencement	1617	1	140	140
Petition:				
Patent-Appeals-and-Interference:				
Post-Allowance-and-Post-Issuance:				
Extension-of-Time:				
Miscellaneous:				
Total in USD (\$)				2700

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	26404925
Application Number:	15112968
International Application Number:	PCT/IB2015/000645
Confirmation Number:	1000
Title of Invention:	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Ahmed Hamdy
Customer Number:	28977
Filer:	Frederick Vogt
Filer Authorized By:	
Attorney Docket Number:	055112-5004-US
Receipt Date:	20-JUL-2016
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	17:25:16
Application Type:	U.S. National Stage under 35 USC 371

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes
Payment Type	Deposit Account
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$2700
RAM confirmation Number	4179
Deposit Account	500310
Authorized User	VOGT, FREDERICK
<p>The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.492 (National application filing, search, and examination fees)</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.17 (Patent application and reexamination processing fees)</p>	

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.19 (Document supply fees)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.21 (Miscellaneous fees and charges)

Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.492(a) (basic national fee only)

File Listing:

Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	Application Data Sheet	aia0014.pdf	1823885	no	11
			317cdf49121b24be5c9606ed0dfd38005cebda44		
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	Documents submitted with 371 Applications	pto-1390.pdf	220222	no	4
			673cef53f6aae6696d05c0f4593d62af46783846		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3	Preliminary Amendment	20160720PRELIM.pdf	115140	no	9
			6e73cf13ec6013c8909fa7234fbaeacb3d6f740db		
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	40084	no	2
			e30ed7c1b002d8a59495ae71dbc34d53e41a0e82		
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			2199331		

This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.

New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111

If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.

National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371

If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.

New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office

If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		
<p>The application data sheet is part of the provisional or nonprovisional application for which it is being submitted. The following form contains the bibliographic data arranged in a format specified by the United States Patent and Trademark Office as outlined in 37 CFR 1.76.</p> <p>This document may be completed electronically and submitted to the Office in electronic format using the Electronic Filing System (EFS) or the document may be printed and included in a paper filed application.</p>			

Secrecy Order 37 CFR 5.2:

☐ Portions or all of the application associated with this Application Data Sheet may fall under a Secrecy Order pursuant to 37 CFR 5.2 (Paper filers only. Applications that fall under Secrecy Order may not be filed electronically.)

Inventor Information:

Inventor	1				Remove	
Legal Name						
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix		
	Hamdy		Ahmed			
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service						
City	Santa Cruz	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence	US	
Mailing Address of Inventor:						
Address 1	640 Henry Cowell Drive					
Address 2						
City	Santa Cruz	State/Province	CA			
Postal Code	95060	Country	US			
Inventor	2				Remove	
Legal Name						
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix		
	Wayne		Rothbaum			
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service						
City	New York	State/Province	NY	Country of Residence	US	
Mailing Address of Inventor:						
Address 1	101 Central Park West, PHC					
Address 2						
City	New York	State/Province	NY			
Postal Code	10023	Country	US			
Inventor	3				Remove	
Legal Name						
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix		
	Raquel		zumi			
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service						

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number		055112-5004-US	
		Application Number			
Title of Invention		Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor			

City	San Carlos	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence	US
------	------------	----------------	----	----------------------	----

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	3437 Brittan Avenue				
Address 2					
City	San Carlos	State/Province	CA		
Postal Code	94070	Country i	US		
Inventor	4				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Brian		Lannutti		
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Solana Beach	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	627 Glencrest Place				
Address 2					
City	Solana Beach	State/Province	CA		
Postal Code	92075	Country i	US		
Inventor	5				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Todd		Covey		
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	San Carlos	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence	US

Mailing Address of Inventor:

Address 1	3437 Brittan Avenue				
Address 2					
City	San Carlos	State/Province	CA		
Postal Code	94070	Country i	US		
Inventor	6				Remove
Legal Name					
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix	
	Roger		Ulrich		
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service					
City	Sammamish	State/Province	WA	Country of Residence	US

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

Mailing Address of Inventor:				
Address 1		22525 SE 46th Place		
Address 2				
City	Sammamish	State/Province	WA	
Postal Code	98075	Country i	US	
Inventor	7			Remove
Legal Name				
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Dave		Johnson	
Residence Information (Select One) ☒ US Residency ☐ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service				
City	Aptos	State/Province	CA	Country of Residence i US

Mailing Address of Inventor:				
Address 1		694 St. Andrew Circle		
Address 2				
City	Aptos	State/Province	CA	
Postal Code	95033	Country i	US	
Inventor	8			Remove
Legal Name				
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Tjeerd		Barf	
Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service				
City	Ravenstein	Country of Residence i		NL

Mailing Address of Inventor:				
Address 1		St. Luciastraat 7		
Address 2				
City	Ravenstein	State/Province		
Postal Code	5371 AS	Country i	NL	
Inventor	9			Remove
Legal Name				
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
	Allard		Kaptein	
Residence Information (Select One) ☐ US Residency ☒ Non US Residency ☐ Active US Military Service				

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

City	Zaltbommel	Country of Residence ⁱ	NL
Mailing Address of Inventor:			
Address 1	Marten van Rossemsingel 51		
Address 2			
City	Zaltbommel	State/Province	
Postal Code	5301 HB	Country ⁱ	NL
All Inventors Must Be Listed - Additional Inventor Information blocks may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			

Correspondence Information:

Enter either Customer Number or complete the Correspondence Information section below. For further information see 37 CFR 1.33(a).			
☐ An Address is being provided for the correspondence information of this application.			
Customer Number	28977		
Email Address	phpatentcorrespondence@morganlewis.com	Add Email	Remove Email

Application Information:

Title of the Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		
Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US	Small Entity Status Claimed	☐
Application Type	Nonprovisional		
Subject Matter	Utility		
Total Number of Drawing Sheets (if any)	28	Suggested Figure for Publication (if any)	1

Filing By Reference:

Only complete this section when filing an application by reference under 35 U.S.C. 111(c) and 37 CFR 1.57(a). Do not complete this section if application papers including a specification and any drawings are being filed. Any domestic benefit or foreign priority information must be provided in the appropriate section(s) below (i.e., "Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information" and "Foreign Priority Information").

For the purposes of a filing date under 37 CFR 1.53(b), the description and any drawings of the present application are replaced by this reference to the previously filed application, subject to conditions and requirements of 37 CFR 1.57(a).

Application number of the previously filed application	Filing date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Intellectual Property Authority or Country

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

Publication Information:

☐	Request Early Publication (Fee required at time of Request 37 CFR 1.219)
☐	Request Not to Publish. I hereby request that the attached application not be published under 35 U.S.C. 122(b) and certify that the invention disclosed in the attached application has not and will not be the subject of an application filed in another country, or under a multilateral international agreement, that requires publication at eighteen months after filing.

Representative Information:

Representative information should be provided for all practitioners having a power of attorney in the application. Providing this information in the Application Data Sheet does not constitute a power of attorney in the application (see 37 CFR 1.32). Either enter Customer Number or complete the Representative Name section below. If both sections are completed the customer Number will be used for the Representative Information during processing.			
Please Select One:			
☒	Customer Number	☐	Limited Recognition (37 CFR 11.9)
Customer Number	28977		

Domestic Benefit/National Stage Information:

This section allows for the applicant to either claim benefit under 35 U.S.C. 119(e), 120, 121, 365(c), or 386(c) or indicate National Stage entry from a PCT application. Providing benefit claim information in the Application Data Sheet constitutes the specific reference required by 35 U.S.C. 119(e) or 120, and 37 CFR 1.78.

When referring to the current application, please leave the "Application Number" field blank.

Prior Application Status	Pending	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
	a 371 of international	PCT/IB2015/000645	2015-01-21
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/IB2015/000645	Claims benefit of provisional	61929742	2014-01-21
Prior Application Status	Expired	Remove	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/IB2015/000645	Claims benefit of provisional	61974665	2014-04-03

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		
Prior Application Status	Expired	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>	
Application Number	Continuity Type	Prior Application Number	Filing or 371(c) Date (YYYY-MM-DD)
PCT/IB2015/000645	Claims benefit of provisional	62035777	2014-08-11
Additional Domestic Benefit/National Stage Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.			<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Foreign Priority Information:

This section allows for the applicant to claim priority to a foreign application. Providing this information in the application data sheet constitutes the claim for priority as required by 35 U.S.C. 119(b) and 37 CFR 1.55. When priority is claimed to a foreign application that is eligible for retrieval under the priority document exchange program (PDX)ⁱ the information will be used by the Office to automatically attempt retrieval pursuant to 37 CFR 1.55(i)(1) and (2). Under the PDX program, applicant bears the ultimate responsibility for ensuring that a copy of the foreign application is received by the Office from the participating foreign intellectual property office, or a certified copy of the foreign priority application is filed, within the time period specified in 37 CFR 1.55(g)(1).

Application Number	Country ⁱ	Filing Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	Access Code ^j (if applicable)	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>
Additional Foreign Priority Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.				<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

☐ This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013 and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.

NOTE: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access:

When this Application Data Sheet is properly signed and filed with the application, applicant has provided written authority to permit a participating foreign intellectual property (IP) office access to the instant application-as-filed (see paragraph A in subsection 1 below) and the European Patent Office (EPO) access to any search results from the instant application (see paragraph B in subsection 1 below).

Should applicant choose not to provide an authorization identified in subsection 1 below, applicant **must opt-out** of the authorization by checking the corresponding box A or B or both in subsection 2 below.

NOTE: This section of the Application Data Sheet is **ONLY** reviewed and processed with the **INITIAL** filing of an application. After the initial filing of an application, an Application Data Sheet cannot be used to provide or rescind authorization for access by a foreign IP office(s). Instead, Form PTO/SB/39 or PTO/SB/69 must be used as appropriate.

1. Authorization to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

A. Priority Document Exchange (PDX) - Unless box A in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the European Patent Office (EPO), the Japan Patent Office (JPO), the Korean Intellectual Property Office (KIPO), the State Intellectual Property Office of the People's Republic of China (SIPO), the World Intellectual Property Organization (WIPO), and any other foreign intellectual property office participating with the USPTO in a bilateral or multilateral priority document exchange agreement in which a foreign application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed, access to: (1) the instant patent application-as-filed and its related bibliographic data, (2) any foreign or domestic application to which priority or benefit is claimed by the instant application and its related bibliographic data, and (3) the date of filing of this Authorization. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(1).

B. Search Results from U.S. Application to EPO - Unless box B in subsection 2 (opt-out of authorization) is checked, the undersigned hereby **grants the USPTO authority** to provide the EPO access to the bibliographic data and search results from the instant patent application when a European patent application claiming priority to the instant patent application is filed. See 37 CFR 1.14(h)(2).

The applicant is reminded that the EPO's Rule 141(1) EPC (European Patent Convention) requires applicants to submit a copy of search results from the instant application without delay in a European patent application that claims priority to the instant application.

2. Opt-Out of Authorizations to Permit Access by a Foreign Intellectual Property Office(s)

☐ A. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to permit a participating foreign IP office access to the instant application-as-filed. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing a participating foreign IP office with any documents and information identified in subsection 1A above.

☐ B. Applicant **DOES NOT** authorize the USPTO to transmit to the EPO any search results from the instant patent application. If this box is checked, the USPTO will not be providing the EPO with search results from the instant application.

NOTE: Once the application has published or is otherwise publicly available, the USPTO may provide access to the application in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

Applicant Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.			
Applicant	1	<input type="button" value="Remove"/>	
<p>If the applicant is the inventor (or the remaining joint inventor or inventors under 37 CFR 1.45), this section should not be completed. The information to be provided in this section is the name and address of the legal representative who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.43; or the name and address of the assignee, person to whom the inventor is under an obligation to assign the invention, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest in the matter who is the applicant under 37 CFR 1.46. If the applicant is an applicant under 37 CFR 1.46 (assignee, person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign, or person who otherwise shows sufficient proprietary interest) together with one or more joint inventors, then the joint inventor or inventors who are also the applicant should be identified in this section.</p>			
		<input type="button" value="Clear"/>	
☐ Assignee	Legal Representative under 35 U.S.C. 117		Joint Inventor
Person to whom the inventor is obligated to assign.		Person who shows sufficient proprietary interest	
If applicant is the legal representative, indicate the authority to file the patent application, the inventor is:			
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>			
Name of the Deceased or Legally Incapacitated Inventor: <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 400px; height: 20px;"></div>			
If the Applicant is an Organization check here. ☒			
Organization Name	Acerta Pharma B.V.		
Mailing Address Information For Applicant:			
Address 1	RK 4210		
Address 2	Industrielaan 63		
City	Oss	State/Province	
Country	NL	Postal Code	5349 AE
Phone Number		Fax Number	
Email Address			
Additional Applicant Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button. <input type="button" value="Add"/>			

Assignee Information including Non-Applicant Assignee Information:

Providing assignment information in this section does not substitute for compliance with any requirement of part 3 of Title 37 of CFR to have an assignment recorded by the Office.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

Assignee 1				
Complete this section if assignee information, including non-applicant assignee information, is desired to be included on the patent application publication. An assignee-applicant identified in the "Applicant Information" section will appear on the patent application publication as an applicant. For an assignee-applicant, complete this section only if identification as an assignee is also desired on the patent application publication.				
				<input type="button" value="Remove"/>
If the Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee is an Organization check here.				☐
Prefix	Given Name	Middle Name	Family Name	Suffix
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Mailing Address Information For Assignee including Non-Applicant Assignee:				
Address 1		<input type="text"/>		
Address 2		<input type="text"/>		
City	<input type="text"/>	State/Province	<input type="text"/>	
Country i	<input type="text"/>	Postal Code	<input type="text"/>	
Phone Number	<input type="text"/>	Fax Number	<input type="text"/>	
Email Address	<input type="text"/>			
Additional Assignee or Non-Applicant Assignee Data may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.				<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Signature:

NOTE: This Application Data Sheet must be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.33(b). **However, if this Application Data Sheet is submitted with the INITIAL filing of the application and either box A or B is not checked in subsection 2 of the "Authorization or Opt-Out of Authorization to Permit Access" section, then this form must also be signed in accordance with 37 CFR 1.14(c).**

This Application Data Sheet **must** be signed by a patent practitioner if one or more of the applicants is a **juristic entity** (e.g., corporation or association). If the applicant is two or more joint inventors, this form must be signed by a patent practitioner, **all** joint inventors who are the applicant, or one or more joint inventor-applicants who have been given power of attorney (e.g., see USPTO Form PTO/AIA/81) on behalf of **all** joint inventor-applicants.

See 37 CFR 1.4(d) for the manner of making signatures and certifications.

Signature	/Frederick G. Vogt/		Date (YYYY-MM-DD)	2016-07-20
First Name	Frederick G.	Last Name	Vogt	Registration Number
				70115
Additional Signature may be generated within this form by selecting the Add button.				<input type="button" value="Add"/>

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it contains a valid OMB control number.

Application Data Sheet 37 CFR 1.76		Attorney Docket Number	055112-5004-US
		Application Number	
Title of Invention	Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.76. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 23 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application data sheet form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. **SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US) CONCERNING A SUBMISSION UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371		Attorney Docket No. 055112-5004-US
		U.S. Application No. (if known, see 37 CFR 1.5)
International Application No. PCT/IB2015/000645	International Filing Date 21 JANUARY 2015	Priority Date Claimed 21 JANUARY 2014
Title of Invention Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor		
First Named Inventor HAMDY, Ahmed		
<p>Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. ☐ This is an express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)). NOTE: The express request under 35 U.S.C. 371(f) will not be effective unless the requirements under 35 U.S.C. 371(c)(1), (2), and (4) for payment of the basic national fee, copy of the International Application and English translation thereof (if required), and the oath or declaration of the inventor(s) have been received. 2. ☐ A copy of the International Application (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) is attached hereto (not required if the International Application was previously communicated by the International Bureau or was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US)). 3. An English language translation of the International Application (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. ☐ is attached hereto. b. ☐ has been previously submitted under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4). 4. An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4)) <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. ☐ is attached. b. ☐ was previously filed in the international phase under PCT Rule 4.17(iv). <p>Items 5 to 8 below concern amendments made in the international phase.</p> <p><u>PCT Article 19 and 34 amendments</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. ☐ Amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 are attached (not required if communicated by the International Bureau) (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)). 6. ☐ English translation of the PCT Article 19 amendment is attached (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)). 7. ☐ English translation of annexes (Article 19 and/or 34 amendments only) of the International Preliminary Examination Report is attached (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)). <p><u>Cancellation of amendments made in the international phase</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 8a. ☐ Do not enter the amendment made in the international phase under PCT Article 19. 8b. ☐ Do not enter the amendment made in the international phase under PCT Article 34. <p>NOTE: A proper amendment made in English under Article 19 or 34 will be entered in the U.S. national phase application absent a clear instruction from applicant not to enter the amendment(s).</p> <p>The following items 9 to 17 concern a document(s) or information included.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. ☐ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. 10. ☒ A preliminary amendment. 11. ☒ An Application Data Sheet under 37 CFR 1.76. 12. ☐ A substitute specification. NOTE: A substitute specification cannot include claims. See 37 CFR 1.125(b). 13. ☐ A power of attorney and/or change of address letter. 14. ☐ A computer-readable form of the sequence listing in accordance with PCT Rule 13ter.3 and 37 CFR 1.821-1.825. 15. ☐ Assignment papers (<i>cover sheet and document(s)</i>). Name of Assignee: _____ 16. ☐ 37 CFR 3.73(c) Statement (<i>when there is an Assignee</i>). _____ 		

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.414 and 1.491-1.492. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 15 minutes to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Mail Stop PCT, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

U.S. APPLN. No. (if known – see 37 CFR 1.5)		INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION No. PCT/IB2015/000645		ATTORNEY DOCKET No. 055112-5004-US	
17. ☐ Other items or information:					
The following fees have been submitted.				CALCULATIONS PTO USE ONLY	
18. ☒ Basic national fee (37 CFR 1.492(a)) \$280				\$ 280	
19. ☐ Examination fee (37 CFR 1.492(c)) If the written opinion prepared by ISA/US or the international preliminary examination report prepared by IPEA/US indicates all claims satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) \$0 All other situations \$720				\$ 720	
20. ☒ Search fee (37 CFR 1.492(b)) If the written opinion prepared by ISA/US or the international preliminary examination report prepared by IPEA/US indicates all claims satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) \$0 Search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) has been paid on the international application to the USPTO as an International Searching Authority \$120 International Search Report prepared by an ISA other than the US and provided to the Office or previously communicated to the US by the IB \$480 All other situations \$600				\$ 600	
TOTAL OF 18, 19, and 20 =				\$ 1600	
☒ Additional fee for specification and drawings filed in paper over 100 sheets (excluding sequence listing in compliance with 37 CFR 1.821(c) or (e) in an electronic medium or computer program listing in an electronic medium) (37 CFR 1.492(j)). Fee for each additional 50 sheets of paper or fraction thereof \$400				800	
Total Sheets	Extra Sheets	Number of each addition 50 or fraction thereof (round up to a whole number)	RATE		
163 - 100 =	/ 50 =	2	x \$400	\$	
Surcharge of \$140.00 for furnishing any of the search fee, examination fee, or the oath or declaration after the date of commencement of the national stage (37 CFR 1.492(h)).				\$ 140	
CLAIMS	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE		
Total claims	22 - 20 =	2	x \$80	\$ 160	
Independent claims	2 - 3 =	0	x \$420	\$	
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM(S) (if applicable)			+ \$780	\$	
Processing fee of \$140.00 for furnishing the English translation later than 30 months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(i)).				\$	
TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =				\$	
☐ Applicant asserts small entity status. See 37 CFR 1.27. Fees above are reduced by ½.					
☐ Applicant certifies micro entity status. See 37 CFR 1.29. Fees above are reduced by ¾. Applicant must attach form PTO/SB/15A or B or equivalent.					
TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =				\$ 2700	
Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00 per property.				\$	
TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =				\$ 2700	
				Amount to be refunded:	\$
				Amount to be charged:	\$

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

- a. ☐ A check in the amount of \$ _____ to cover the above fees is enclosed.
- b. ☒ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 50-0310 in the amount of \$ 2300 to cover the above fees.
- c. ☒ The Director is hereby authorized to charge additional fees which may be required, or credit any overpayment, to Deposit Account No. 50-0310 as follows:
- i. ☒ any required fee.
- ii. ☐ any required fee except for excess claims fees required under 37 CFR 1.492(d) and (e) and multiple dependent claim fee required under 37 CFR 1.492(f).
- d. ☐ Fees are to be charged to a credit card. **WARNING:** Information on this form may become public. Credit card information should not be included on this form. Provide credit card information and authorization on PTO-2038. The PTO-2038 should only be mailed or faxed to the USPTO. However, when paying the basic national fee, the PTO-2038 may NOT be faxed to the USPTO.
- ADVISORY:** If filing by EFS-Web, do NOT attach the PTO-2038 form as a PDF along with your EFS-Web submission. Please be advised that this is **not** recommended and by doing so your **credit card information may be displayed via PAIR**. To protect your information, it is recommended to pay fees online by using the electronic payment method.

NOTE: Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR 1.137(a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the International Application to pending status.

Statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78 for AIA (First Inventor to File) Transition Applications

- ☐ This application (1) claims priority to or the benefit of an application filed before March 16, 2013, and (2) also contains, or contained at any time, a claim to a claimed invention that has an effective filing date on or after March 16, 2013.

NOTE 1: By providing this statement under 37 CFR 1.55 or 1.78, this application, with a filing date on or after March 16, 2013, will be examined under the first inventor to file provisions of the AIA.

NOTE 2: A U.S. national stage application may not claim priority to the international application of which it is the national phase. The filing date of a U.S. national stage application is the international filing date. See 35 U.S.C. 363.

Correspondence Address

- ☒ The address associated with Customer Number: 28977 OR ☐ Correspondence address below

Name					
Address					
City		State		Zip Code	
Country				Telephone	
Email					

Signature	/Frederick G. Vogt/	Date	20 July 2016
Name (Print/Type)	Frederick G. Vogt	Registration No. (Attorney/Agent)	70115

Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

PCT

REQUEST

The undersigned requests that the present international application be processed according to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.

For receiving Office use only

PCT/IB2015/000645

International Application No.

21 January 2015 (21.01.15)

International Filing Date

INTERNATIONAL BUREAU OF WIPO

Name of receiving Office and "PCT International Application"

Applicant's or agent's file reference
(if desired) (12 characters maximum) 055112-5004-WO

Box No. I TITLE OF INVENTION	
Methods of Treating Chronic Lymphocytic Leukemia and Small Lymphocytic Leukemia Using a BTK Inhibitor	
Box No. II APPLICANT ☐ This person is also inventor	
Name and address: (Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.) Acerta Pharma B.V. Pivot Park Room RK 2111 Molenweg 79 5349 AC Oss, The Netherlands	
Telephone No.	
Facsimile No.	
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
E-mail authorization: Marking one of the check-boxes below authorizes the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority, the International Bureau and the International Preliminary Examining Authority to use the e-mail address indicated in this Box to send, notifications issued in respect of this international application to that e-mail address if those offices are willing to do so. ☐ as advance copies followed by paper notifications; or ☐ exclusively in electronic form (no paper notifications will be sent). E-mail address:	
State (that is, country) of nationality: NL	State (that is, country) of residence: NL
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☒ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S)	
☒ Further applicants and/or (further) inventors are indicated on a continuation sheet.	
Box No. IV AGENT OR COMMON REPRESENTATIVE; OR ADDRESS FOR CORRESPONDENCE	
The person identified below is hereby/has been appointed to act on behalf of the applicant(s) before the competent International Authorities as: ☒ agent ▲ ☐ common representative	
Name and address: (Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country.) VOGT, Frederick G. Morgan Lewis & Bockius LLP 1701 Market Street Philadelphia, Pennsylvania 19103 United States of America	
Telephone No. 215.963.4608	
Facsimile No. 215.963.5001	
Agent's registration No. with the Office 70115	
E-mail authorization: Marking one of the check-boxes below authorizes the receiving Office, the International Searching Authority, the International Bureau and the International Preliminary Examining Authority to use the e-mail address indicated in this Box to send, notifications issued in respect of this international application to that e-mail address if those offices are willing to do so. ☒ as advance copies followed by paper notifications; or ☐ exclusively in electronic form (no paper notifications will be sent). E-mail address: phpatentcorrespondence@morganlewis.com	
▲ ☒ Address for correspondence: Mark this check-box where no agent or common representative is/has been appointed and the space above is used instead to indicate a special address to which correspondence should be sent.	

Form PCT/RO/101 (first sheet) (16 September 2012)

See Notes to the request form

▲RO

Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S) <i>If none of the following sub-boxes is used, this sheet should not be included in the request.</i>	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> HAMDY, Ahmed 640 Henry Cowell Drive Santa Cruz, California 95060 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> ROTHBAUM, Wayne 101 Central Park West, PHC New York, New York 10023 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> IZUMI, Raquel 3437 Brittan Avenue San Carlos, California 94070 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> LANNUTTI, Brian 627 Glencrest Place Solana Beach, California 92075 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
☒ Further applicants and/or (further) inventors are indicated on another continuation sheet.	

Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S) <i>If none of the following sub-boxes is used, this sheet should not be included in the request.</i>	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> COVEY, Todd 3437 Brittan Avenue San Carlos, California 94070 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State (that is, country) of nationality:	State (that is, country) of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> ULRICH, Roger 22525 SE 46th Place Sammamish, Washington 98075 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State (that is, country) of nationality:	State (that is, country) of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> JOHNSON, Dave 4442 54th Avenue SW Seattle, Washington 98116 United States of America	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State (that is, country) of nationality:	State (that is, country) of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> BARF, Tjeerd St. Luciastraat 7 5371 AS, Ravenstein The Netherlands	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State (that is, country) of nationality:	State (that is, country) of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
☒ Further applicants and/or (further) inventors are indicated on another continuation sheet.	

Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S) <i>If none of the following sub-boxes is used, this sheet should not be included in the request.</i>	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i> KAPTEIN, Allard Nonnenstraat 14 5301 BJ, Zaltmommel The Netherlands	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☒ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i>	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☐ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i>	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☐ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i>	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☐ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
Name and address: <i>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below.)</i>	This person is: ☐ applicant only ☐ applicant and inventor ☐ inventor only <i>(If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)</i>
Applicant's registration No. with the Office	
State <i>(that is, country)</i> of nationality:	State <i>(that is, country)</i> of residence:
This person is applicant for the purposes of: ☐ all designated States ☐ the States indicated in the Supplemental Box	
☐ Further applicants and/or (further) inventors are indicated on another continuation sheet.	

Supplemental Box

If the Supplemental Box is not used, this sheet should not be included in the request.

1. If, in any of the Boxes, except Boxes Nos. VIII(i) to (v) for which a special continuation box is provided, **the space is insufficient** to furnish all the information: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No." (indicate the number of the Box) and furnish the information in the same manner as required according to the captions of the Box in which the space was insufficient, in particular:
 - (i) **if more than one person is to be indicated as applicant and/or inventor** and no "continuation sheet" is available: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. III" and indicate for each additional person the same type of information as required in Box No. III. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below;
 - (ii) if, in Box No. II or in any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, the indication **"the States indicated in the Supplemental Box"** is checked: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the applicant(s) involved and, next to (each) such name, the State(s) (and/or, where applicable, ARIPO, Eurasian, European or OAPI patent) for the purposes of which the named person is applicant;
 - (iii) if, in Box No. II or in any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, **the inventor or the inventor/applicant is not inventor for the purposes of all designated States**: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the inventor(s) and, next to (each) such name, the State(s) (and/or, where applicable, ARIPO, Eurasian, European or OAPI patent) for the purposes of which the named person is inventor;
 - (iv) if, in addition to the agent(s) indicated in Box No. IV, there are **further agents**: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. IV" and indicate for each further agent the same type of information as required in Box No. IV;
 - (v) if, in Box No. VI, there are **more than three earlier applications whose priority is claimed**: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. VI" and indicate for each additional earlier application the same type of information as required in Box No. VI.
2. If the applicant intends to make an indication of the wish that the international application be treated, in certain designated States, as an application for a patent of addition, certificate of addition, inventor's certificate of addition or utility certificate of addition: in such case, write the name or two-letter code of each designated State concerned and the indication **"patent of addition," "certificate of addition," "inventor's certificate of addition"** or **"utility certificate of addition,"** the number of the parent application or parent patent or other parent grant and the date of grant of the parent patent or other parent grant or the date of filing of the parent application (Rules 4.11(a)(i) and 49bis.1(a) or (b)).
3. If the applicant intends to make an indication of the wish that the international application be treated, in the United States of America, as a continuation or continuation-in-part of an earlier application: in such case, write **"United States of America"** or **"US"** and the indication **"continuation"** or **"continuation-in-part"** and the number and the filing date of the parent application (Rules 4.11(a)(ii) and 49bis.1(d)).

Continuation of Box IV:

BEARDELL, Jr., Louis W., Reg. No. 40,506
 HALLIDAY, Christopher I., Reg. No. 42,621
 DAVIS, Kenneth J., Reg. No. 50,688
 MCCULLEN, Sharon B., 54,303
 VIRELLI, Jr., Louis J., Reg. No. 26,818
 WEISBERG, Alison B., Reg. No. 45,206
 KOLESAR, Dana, Reg. No. 53,338
 HEMMER, John L., Reg. No. 58,752
 UDAL, Robert P., Reg. No. 56,608
 LEUNG, Richard L., Reg. No. 60,711
 RYAN, Michael, Reg. No. 63,115
 SERVANCE, Squire J., Reg. No. 65,135
 VOGT, Frederick G., Reg. No. 70,115
 LEACH, Justine, Reg. No. 58,957
 PATHAK, Shantanu, Reg. No. 65,585
 (All of the above attorneys and/or patent agents are members of Morgan Lewis & Bockius LLP (contact information for all is listed in Box IV))

Continuation of Box VI:

item (4)

Filing date: 03 April 2014 (03.04.2014)

Number: 61/974,665

Country: US

Box No. V DESIGNATIONS				
<p>The filing of this request constitutes under Rule 4.9(a) the designation of all Contracting States bound by the PCT on the international filing date, for the grant of every kind of protection available and, where applicable, for the grant of both regional and national patents.</p> <p>However,</p> <p>☐ DE Germany is not designated for any kind of national protection</p> <p>☐ JP Japan is not designated for any kind of national protection</p> <p>☐ KR Republic of Korea is not designated for any kind of national protection</p> <p><i>(The check-boxes above may only be used to exclude (irrevocably) the designations concerned if, at the time of filing or subsequently under Rule 26bis.1, the international application contains in Box No. VI a priority claim to an earlier national application filed in the particular State concerned, in order to avoid the ceasing of the effect, under the national law, of this earlier national application.)</i></p>				
Box No. VI PRIORITY CLAIM AND DOCUMENT				
<p>The priority of the following earlier application(s) is hereby claimed:</p>				
Filing date of earlier application (day/month/year)	Number of earlier application	Where earlier application is:		
		national application: country or Member of WTO	regional application: regional Office	international application: receiving Office
item (1) 21 January 2014 (21.01.2014)	61/929,742	US		
item (2) 05 December 2014 (05.12.2014)	PCT/US14/68938	US		
item (3) 11 August 2014 (11.08.2014)	62/035,777	US		
<p>☒ Further priority claims are indicated in the Supplemental Box.</p>				
<p>Furnishing the priority document(s):</p> <p>☒ The receiving Office is requested to prepare and transmit to the International Bureau a certified copy of the earlier application(s) (only if the earlier application(s) was filed with the receiving Office which, for the purposes of this international application, is the receiving Office) identified above as:</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"> ☒ all items ☐ item (1) ☐ item (2) ☐ item (3) ☐ other, see Supplemental Box </p> <p>☐ The International Bureau is requested to obtain from a digital library a certified copy of the earlier application(s) identified above, using, where applicable, the access code(s) indicated below (if the earlier application(s) is available to it from a digital library):</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;"> ☐ item (1) access code _____ ☐ item (2) access code _____ ☐ item (3) access code _____ ☐ other, see Supplemental Box </p>				
<p>Restore the right of priority: the receiving Office is requested to restore the right of priority for the earlier application(s) identified above or in the Supplemental Box as item(s) _____. (See also the Notes to Box No. VI; further information must be provided to support a request to restore the right of priority.)</p>				
<p>Incorporation by reference: where an element of the international application referred to in Article 11(1)(iii)(d) or (e) or a part of the description, claims or drawings referred to in Rule 20.5(a) is not otherwise contained in this international application but is completely contained in an earlier application whose priority is claimed on the date on which one or more elements referred to in Article 11(1)(iii) were first received by the receiving Office, that element or part is, subject to confirmation under Rule 20.6, incorporated by reference in this international application for the purposes of Rule 20.6.</p>				
Box No. VII INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY				
<p>Choice of International Searching Authority (ISA) (if more than one International Searching Authority is competent to carry out the international search, indicate the Authority chosen; the two-letter code may be used):</p> <p>ISA/ EP _____</p>				

Box No. IX CHECK LIST for EFS-Web filings - this sheet is only to be used when filing an international application with RO/US via EFS-Web			
<p>This international application contains the following:</p> <p>(a) request form PCT/RO/101 (including any declarations and supplemental sheets) : 7</p> <p>(b) description (excluding any sequence listing part of the description, see (f), below) : 108</p> <p>(c) claims : 5</p> <p>(d) abstract : 1</p> <p>(e) drawings (if any) : 28</p> <p>(f) sequence listing part of the description in the form of an image file (e.g. PDF) : 22</p> <hr/> <p>Total number of sheets (including the sequence listing part of the description if filed as an image file) : 171</p> <p>(g) sequence listing part of the description</p> <p>☒ filed in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file</p> <p>☐ WILL BE filed separately on physical data carrier(s), on the same day and in the form of an Annex C/ST.25 text file</p> <p>Indicate type and number of physical data carrier(s) :</p>	<p>Number of sheets</p>	<p>This international application is accompanied by the following item(s) <i>(mark the applicable check-boxes below and indicate in right column the number of each item):</i></p> <p>1. ☒ fee calculation sheet : 1</p> <p>2. ☐ original separate power of attorney :</p> <p>3. ☐ original general power of attorney :</p> <p>4. ☐ copy of general power of attorney; reference number: :</p> <p>5. ☐ priority document(s) identified in Box No. VI as item(s) :</p> <p>6. ☐ Translation of international application into (language): :</p> <p>7. ☐ separate indications concerning deposited microorganism or other biological material :</p> <p>8. ☒ (only where item (f) is marked in the left column) copy of the sequence listing in electronic form (Annex C/ST.25 text file) not forming part of the international application but furnished only for the purposes of international search under Rule 13ter. : 1</p> <p>9. ☒ (only where item (f) is marked in the left column) a statement confirming that "the information recorded in electronic form submitted under Rule 13ter is identical to the sequence listing as contained in the international application" as filed via EFS-Web: : 1</p> <p>10. ☐ copy of results of earlier search(es) (Rule 12bis.1(a)) :</p> <p>11. ☐ other (specify): :</p>	<p>Number of items</p>
<p>Figure of the drawings which should accompany the abstract: 1</p>	<p>Language of filing of the international application: English</p>		
<p>Box No. X SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT, AGENT OR COMMON REPRESENTATIVE</p> <p><i>Next to each signature, indicate the name of the person signing and the capacity in which the person signs (if such capacity is not obvious from reading the request).</i></p>			
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-right: 10px;"> <p>/Frederick G. Vogt/</p> <hr style="border: 0; border-top: 1px solid black;"/> <p>Frederick G. Vogt PTO Regis. No. 70115</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>▲</p> </div> </div>			

For receiving Office use only			
1. Date of actual receipt of the purported international application:	21 January 2015 (21.01.15)	<p>2. Drawings:</p> <p>☐ received:</p> <p>☐ not received:</p>	
3. Corrected date of actual receipt due to later but timely received papers or drawings completing the purported international application:			
4. Date of timely receipt of the required corrections under PCT Article 11(2):			
5. International Searching Authority (if two or more are competent): ISA / EP	6. ☒ Transmittal of search copy delayed until search fee is paid		
For International Bureau use only			
<p>Date of receipt of the record copy by the International Bureau:</p>			

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

PCTNOTIFICATION OF THE RECORDING
OF A CHANGE(PCT Rule 92bis.1 and
Administrative Instructions, Section 422)

To:

HANSEN, Norbert
Maiwald Patentanwalts Gmbh
Elisenhof, Elisenstrasse 3
80335 München
ALLEMAGNE

Date of mailing (day/month/year) 05 June 2015 (05.06.2015)	IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION
Applicant's or agent's file reference A 16064/NH	
International application No. PCT/IB2015/000645	International filing date (day/month/year) 21 January 2015 (21.01.2015)

1. The following indications appeared on record concerning:		
☐ the applicant	☐ the inventor	☒ the agent
☐ the common representative		
Name and Address	State of Nationality	State of Residence
	Telephone No.	
	Facsimile No.	
	E-mail address	
2. The International Bureau hereby notifies the applicant that the following change has been recorded concerning:		
☒ the person	☐ the name	☐ the address
☐ the nationality	☐ the residence	
Name and Address HANSEN, Norbert Maiwald Patentanwalts Gmbh Elisenhof, Elisenstrasse 3 80335 München Germany	State of Nationality	State of Residence
	Telephone No.	
	Facsimile No.	
	E-mail address ☐ Notifications by e-mail authorized	
3. Further observations, if necessary: Agent has been appointed. Please note the new file reference.		
4. A copy of this notification has been sent to:		
☐ the receiving Office	☐ the International Preliminary Examining Authority	
☒ the International Searching Authority	☐ the designated Offices concerned	
☐ the Authority(ies) specified for supplementary search	☐ the elected Offices concerned	
	☒ other: VOGT, Frederick, G.	

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des Colombettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland	Authorized officer Martinez Sandrine e-mail ro.ib@wipo.int Telephone No. +4122 338 9741
Facsimile No. +41 22 910 06 10	

Form PCT/IB/306 (January 2009)

1/H3TLW53YGWNFQ0

683622

THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

TO ALL TO WHOM THESE PRESENTS SHALL COME:

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

United States Patent and Trademark Office

February 08, 2015

THIS IS TO CERTIFY THAT ANNEXED HERETO IS A TRUE COPY FROM THE RECORDS OF THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE OF THOSE PAPERS OF THE BELOW IDENTIFIED PATENT APPLICATION THAT MET THE REQUIREMENTS TO BE GRANTED A FILING DATE.

APPLICATION NUMBER: *PCT/US14/68938*

FILING DATE: *December 05, 2014*

RELATED PCT APPLICATION NUMBER: *PCT/US15/12288*

THE COUNTRY CODE AND NUMBER OF YOUR PRIORITY APPLICATION, TO BE USED FOR FILING ABROAD UNDER THE PARIS CONVENTION, IS *USPCT/US14/68938*



Certified by

David J. Kyros

Under Secretary of Commerce
for Intellectual Property
and Director of the United States
Patent and Trademark Office

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

TRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATES RECEIVING OFFICE

Express Mail mailing number: being filed via efs		Date of deposit: 05 December 2014
File reference no.: 055112-5002-WO	International application no. (if known):	
Customer Number ¹ : 28977	Earliest priority date claimed (Day/Month/Year): 05 December 2013	
Title of the invention: Therapeutic Combination of a PI3K Inhibitor and a BTK Inhibitor		

¹ Customer Number will allow access to the application in Private PAIR but cannot be used to establish or change the correspondence address.☒ **This is a new International Application****SCREENING DISCLOSURE INFORMATION:**

In order to assist in screening the accompanying international application for purposes of determining whether a license for foreign transmittal should and could be granted and for other purposes, the following information is supplied. (check as boxes as apply):

- ☐ The invention disclosed was **not** made in the United States of America.
- ☐ There is no prior U.S. application relating to this invention.
- ☒ The following prior U.S. application(s) contain subject matter which is related to the invention disclosed in the attached international application. (NOTE: priority to these applications may or may not be claimed on the Request (form PCT/RO/101) and this listing does **not** constitute a claim for priority.)

application no.	61/912,515	filed on	05 December 2013
application no.	61/974,665	filed on	03 April 2014

- ☒ The present international application contains additional subject matter not found in the prior U.S. application(s) identified above. The additional subject matter is found on pages 62/035,777 filed on 11 August, 2014 throughout
- and ☒ **DOES NOT ALTER** ☐ **MIGHT BE CONSIDERED TO ALTER** the general nature of the invention in a manner which would require the U.S. application to have been made available for inspection by the appropriate defense agencies under 35 U.S.C. 181 and 37 C.F.R. 5.15.

Itemized list of contents

Sheets of Request form: 7	Check no.:
Sheets of description (excluding sequence listing): 147	Return receipt postcard:
Sheets of claims: 29	Power of attorney:
Sheets of abstract: 1	Certified copy of priority document (specify):
Sheets of drawings: 60	Other (specify): Fee Calc Sheet
Sheets of sequence listing:	
Sequence listing diskette/CD:	

The person signing this form is:	☐ Applicant	Name of person signing Frederick G. Vogt
	☒ Attorney/Agent (Reg. No.) 70115	
	☐ Common Representative	Signature /Frederick G. Vogt/

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.10 and 1.412. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public, which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.11 and 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 15 minutes to complete, including gathering information, preparing, and submitting the completed form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS.

SEND TO: Mail Stop PCT, Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.

Privacy Act Statement

The **Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579)** requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether disclosure of these records is required by the Freedom of Information Act.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (*i.e.*, GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspection or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt	
EFS ID:	20885413
Application Number:	
International Application Number:	PCT/US14/68938
Confirmation Number:	3541
Title of Invention:	Therapeutic Combination of a PI3K Inhibitor and a BTK Inhibitor
First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:	Acerta Pharma B.V.
Customer Number:	28977
Correspondence Address:	Frederick G. Vogt Morgan Lewis & Bockius LLP 1701 Market Street - Philadelphia PA 19103 US 2159634608 phpatentcorrespondence@morganlewis.com
Filer:	Frederick Vogt/Robert Smyth
Filer Authorized By:	Frederick Vogt
Attorney Docket Number:	055112-5002-WO
Receipt Date:	05-DEC-2014
Filing Date:	
Time Stamp:	20:36:21
Application Type:	International Application for filing in the US receiving office
Patent Number:	

Payment information:

Submitted with Payment	yes				
Payment Type	Deposit Account				
Payment was successfully received in RAM	\$7783				
RAM confirmation Number	6433				
Deposit Account	500310				
Authorized User					
<p>The Director of the USPTO is hereby authorized to charge indicated fees and credit any overpayment as follows:</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.445 (International application filing, processing and search fees)</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under 37 CFR 1.17(t) (Acceptance of an unintentionally delayed claim for priority)</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under PCT Rule 14</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under PCT Rule 15</p> <p>Charge any Additional Fees required under PCT Rule 16</p>					
File Listing:					
Document Number	Document Description	File Name	File Size(Bytes)/ Message Digest	Multi Part /.zip	Pages (if appl.)
1	PCT-Transmittal Letter	20141205TRANS.pdf	230041	no	2
			ff12856e5cd51c456c38ce1345147a662c3421d4		
Warnings:					
Information:					
2	RO/101 - Request form for new IA - Conventional	20141205PCTREQ.pdf	538173	no	7
			45ac62856c1676baec4d227488e29f052fa3d64b		
Warnings:					
Information:					
3		20141205SPEC.pdf	1228461	yes	177
			2200c3531563ff12194eac79e4bd61efa0f9821e		
	Multipart Description/PDF files in .zip description				
	Document Description		Start	End	
	Specification		1	147	
	Claims		148	176	
	Abstract		177	177	
Warnings:					
Information:					
4	Drawings-other than black and white line drawings	20141205DWGS.pdf	1449359	no	60
			2a3496cd72438144ca330a2b7d2a6cce65a40ecdb		
Warnings:					
Information:					

5	RO/101 - Annex (fee calculation sheet)	20141205FEECALC.pdf	67321 f543f1f5ecb8f99dbeb53eb9940fd8e16b5b301c	no	1
Warnings:					
Information:					
6	Fee Worksheet (SB06)	fee-info.pdf	36214 bbf861af9519084fdb3125d803655b244a8c331f9	no	2
Warnings:					
Information:					
Total Files Size (in bytes):			3549569		
<p>This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.</p> <p><u>New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111</u> If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.</p> <p><u>National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371</u> If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.</p> <p><u>New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office</u> If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.</p>					

This sheet is not part of and does not count as a sheet of the international application.

PCT

FEE CALCULATION SHEET
Annex to the Request

For receiving Office use only

International Application No.

Applicant's or agent's
file reference

055112-5002-WO

Date stamp of the receiving Office

Applicant

Acerta Pharma B.V.

CALCULATION OF PRESCRIBED FEES

1. TRANSMITTAL FEE 240 T

2. SEARCH FEE 2545 S

International search to be carried out by EP
(If two or more International Searching Authorities are competent to carry out the international search, indicate the name of the Authority which is chosen to carry out the international search.)

3. INTERNATIONAL FILING FEE

Enter total number of sheets indicated in Box No IX: 244

i1 first 30 sheets 1360 i1

i2 214 x 17 = 3638 i2
number of sheets fee per sheet
in excess of 30

Add amounts entered at i1 and i2 and enter total at I 4998 I

(Applicants from certain States are entitled to a reduction of 90% of the international filing fee. Where the applicant is (or all applicants are) so entitled, the total to be entered at I is 10% of the international filing fee.)

4. FEE FOR PRIORITY DOCUMENT (if applicable) P

5. FEE FOR RESTORATION OF THE RIGHT OF PRIORITY (if applicable) RP

6. FEE FOR EARLIER SEARCH DOCUMENTS (if applicable) ES

7. TOTAL FEES PAYABLE 7783.00

Add amounts entered at T, S, I, P, RP and ES,
and enter total in the TOTAL box

TOTAL

MODE OF PAYMENT (Not all modes of payment may be available at all receiving Offices)

- ☒ authorization to charge deposit or current account (see below) ☐ postal money order ☐ credit card (details should be furnished separately and not included on this sheet) ☐ cash
☐ check ☐ bank transfer ☐ revenue stamps ☐ other (specify):

AUTHORIZATION TO CHARGE (OR CREDIT) DEPOSIT OR CURRENT ACCOUNT

(This mode of payment may not be available at all receiving Offices)

- ☒ Authorization to charge the total fees indicated above.
☒ (This check-box may be marked only if the conditions for deposit or current accounts of the receiving Office so permit) Authorization to charge any deficiency or credit any overpayment in the total fees indicated above.
☐ Authorization to charge the fee for priority document.

Receiving Office: RO/ US

Deposit or Current Account No.: 500310

Date: 05 December 2014

Name: Frederick G. Vogt

Signature: /Frederick G. Vogt/

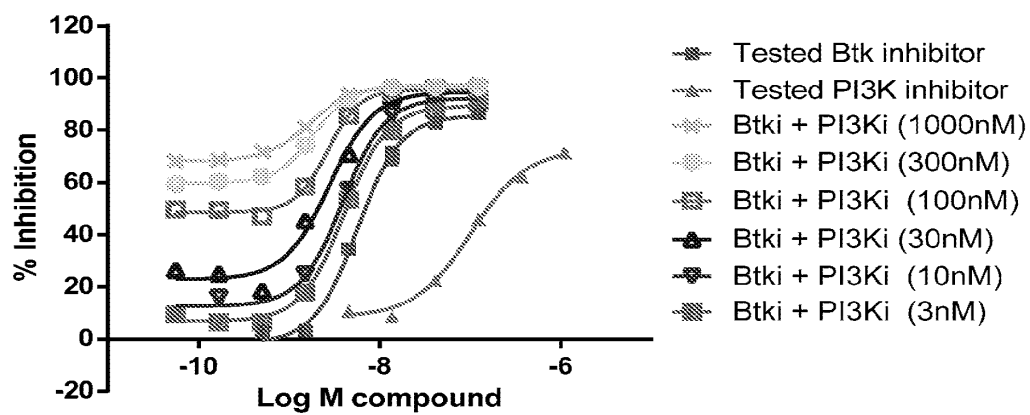


FIG. 1

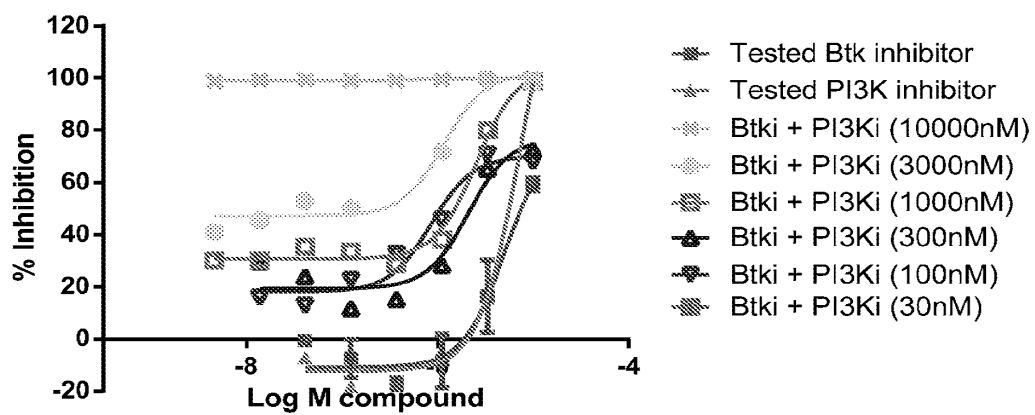


FIG. 2

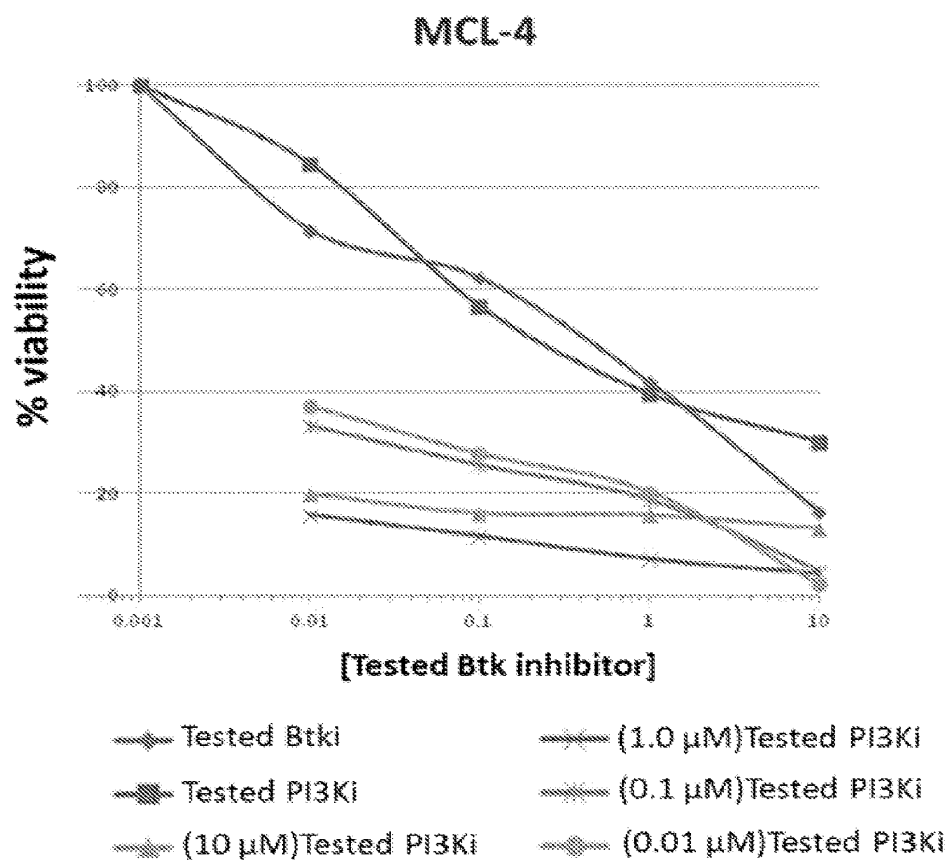


FIG. 3

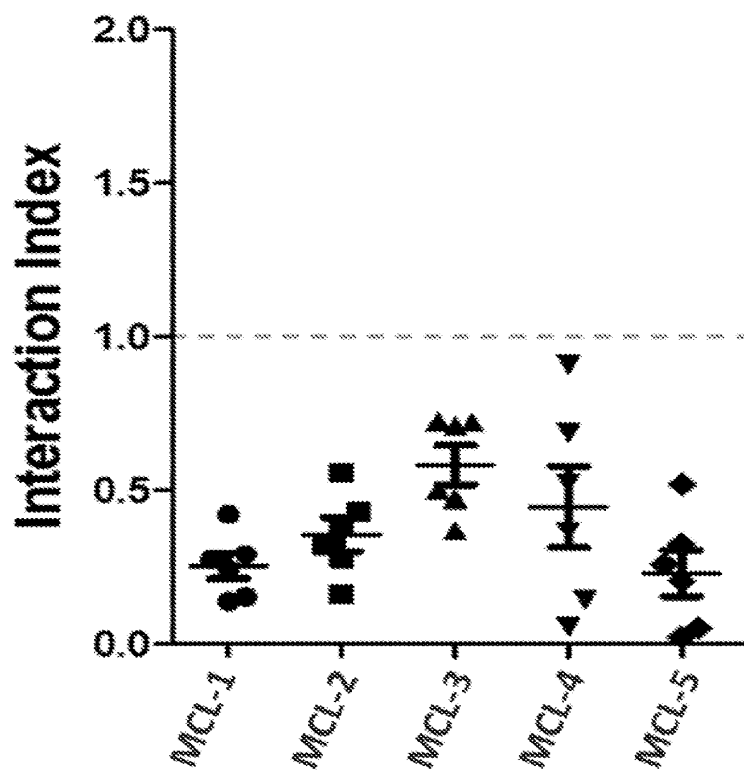


FIG. 4

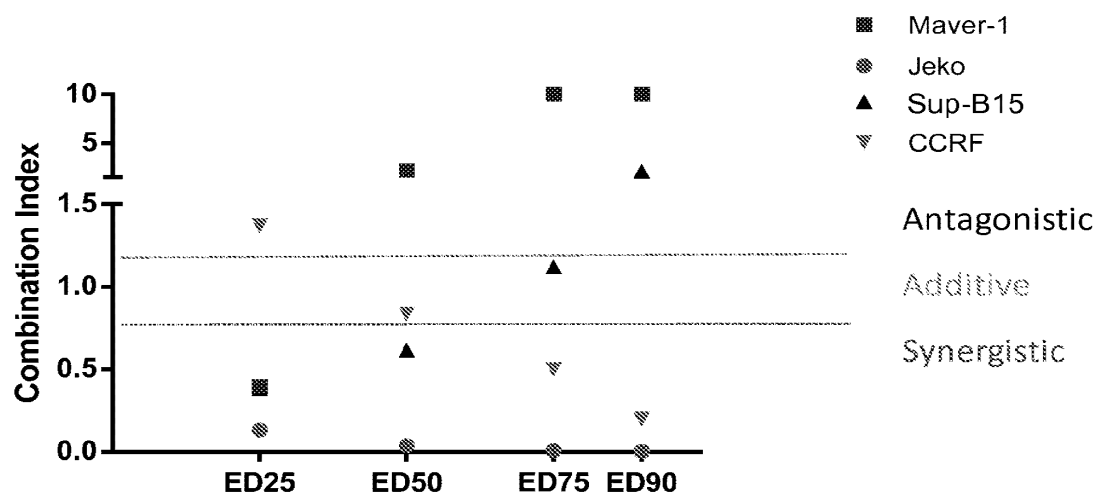


FIG. 5

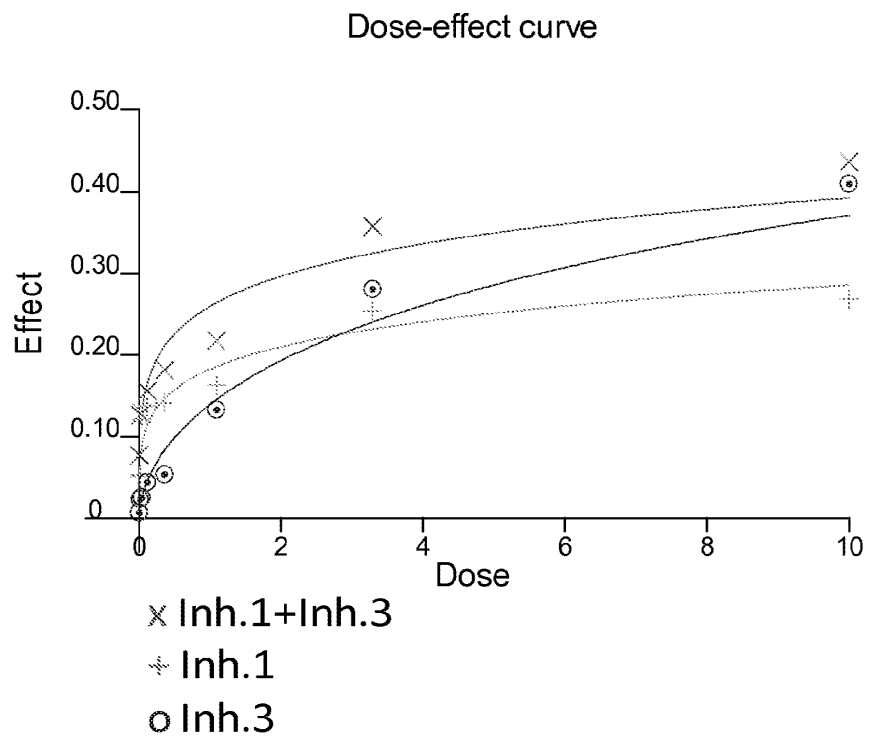


FIG. 6

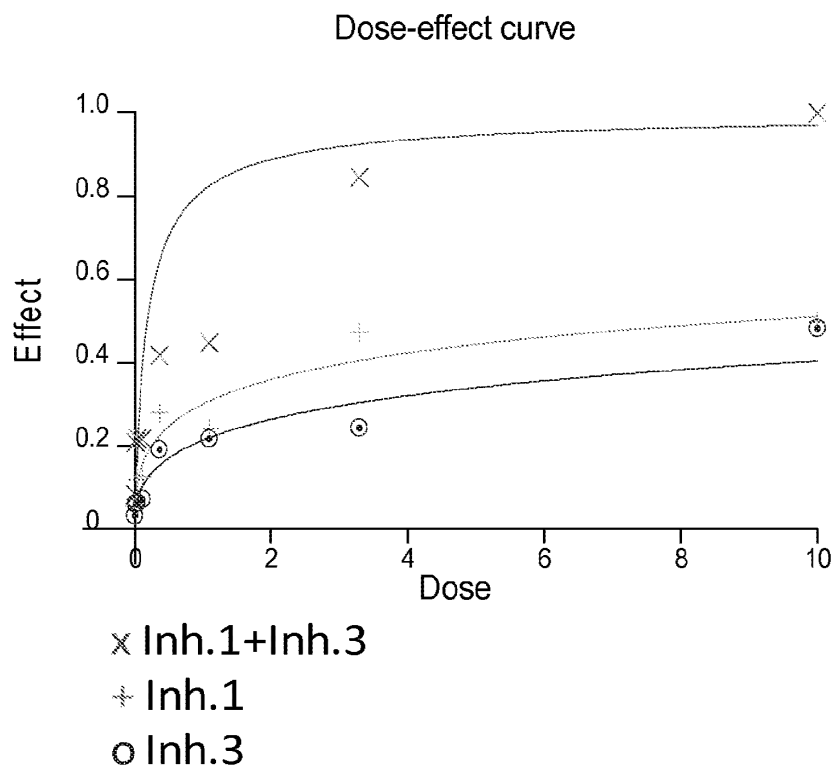


FIG. 7

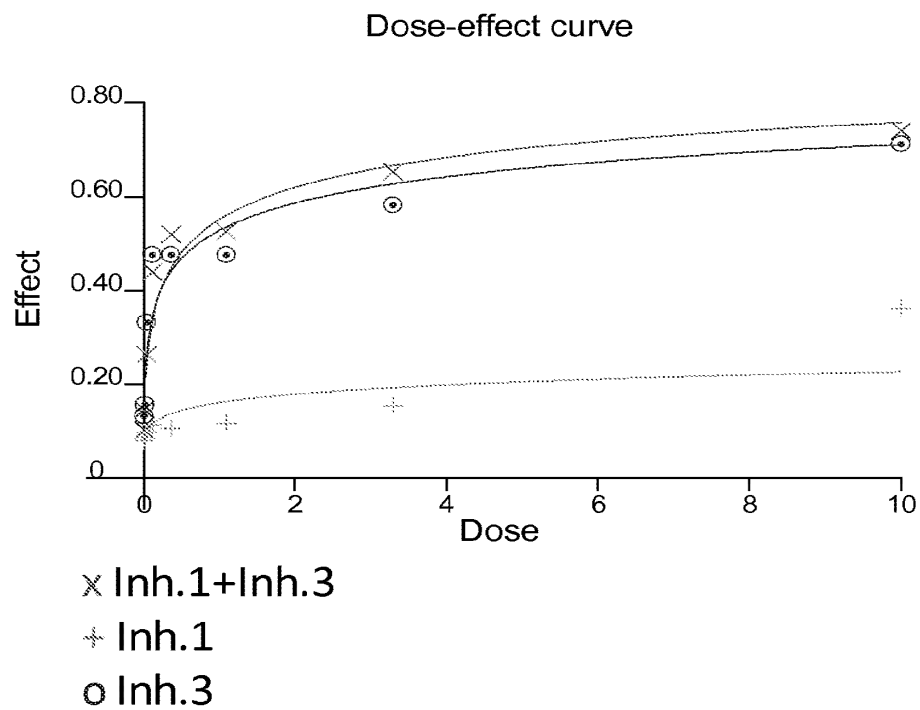


FIG. 8

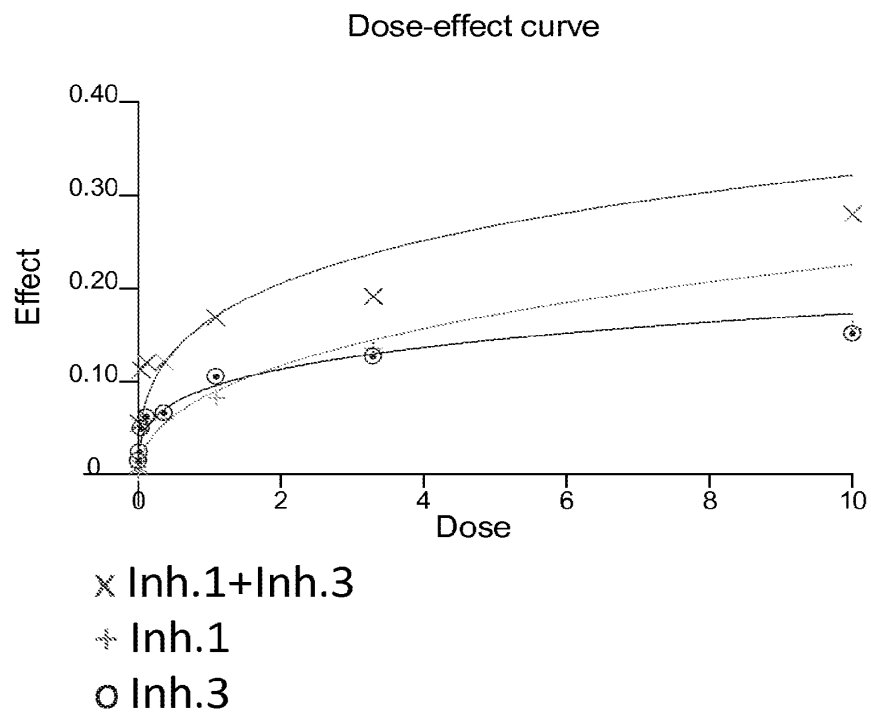


FIG. 9

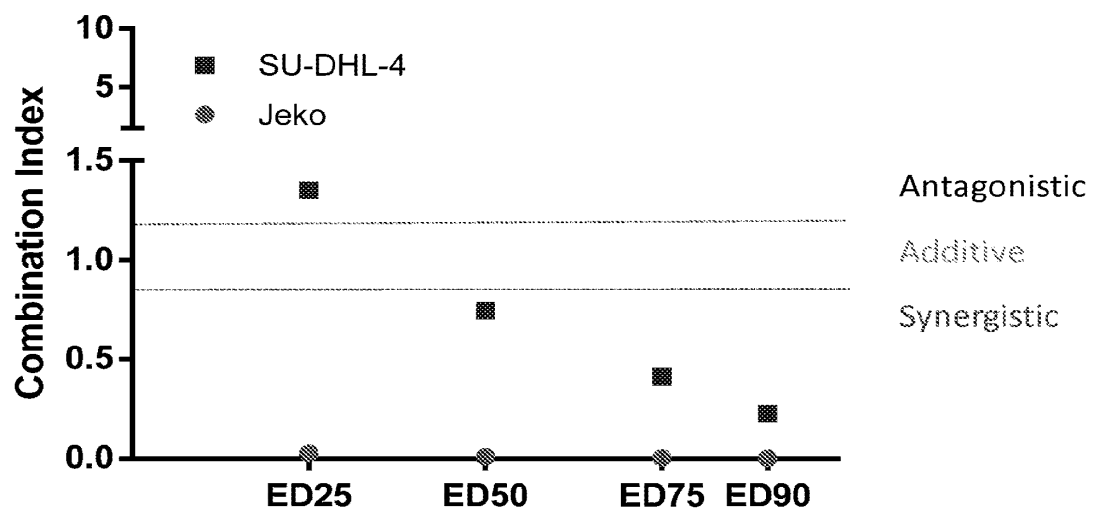


FIG. 10

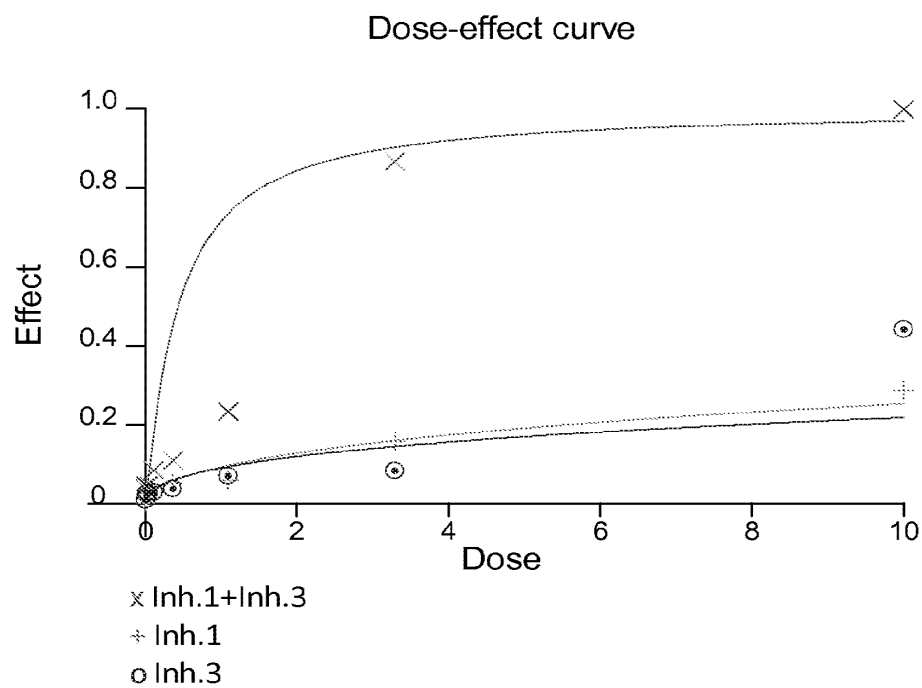


FIG. 11

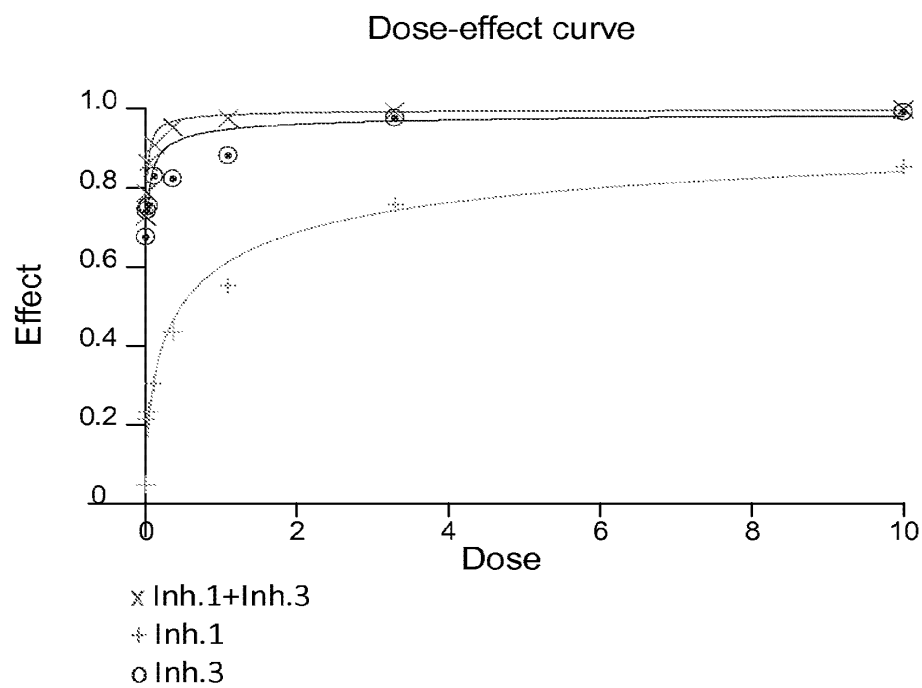


FIG. 12

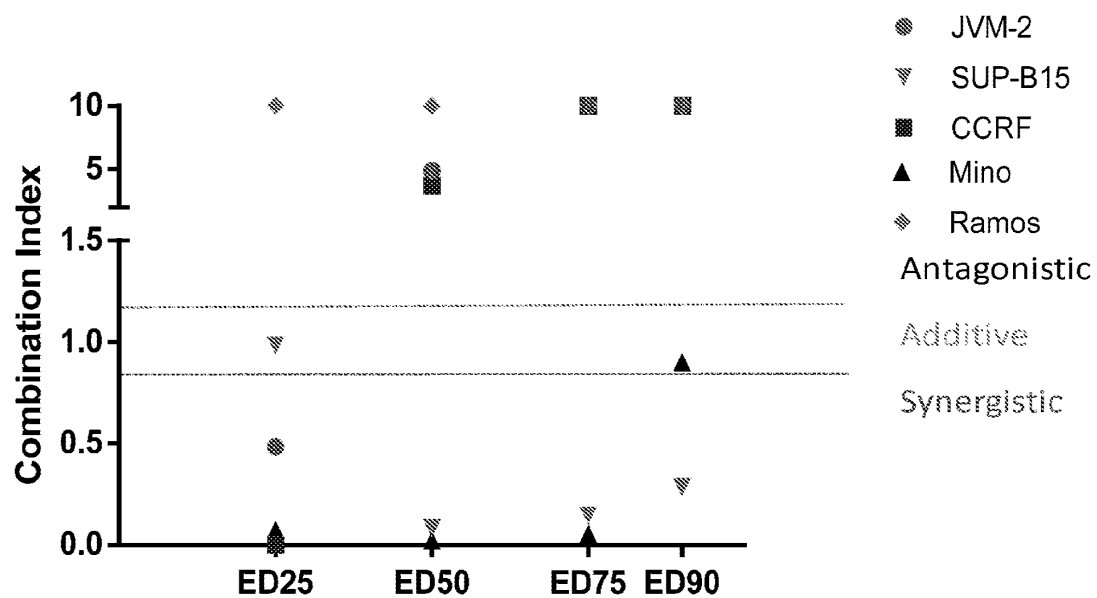


FIG. 13

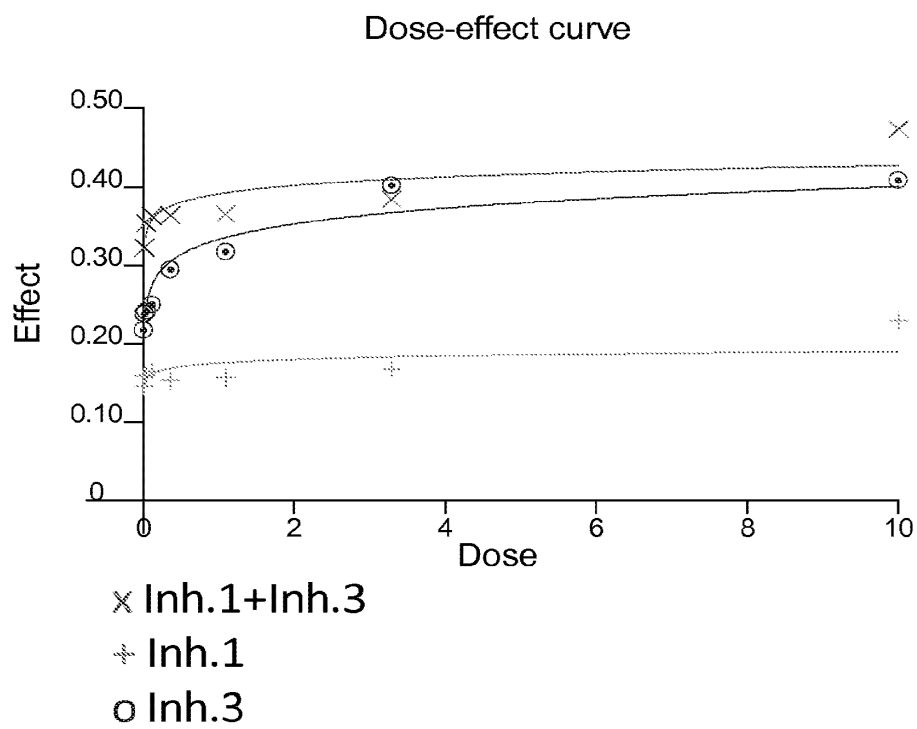


FIG. 14

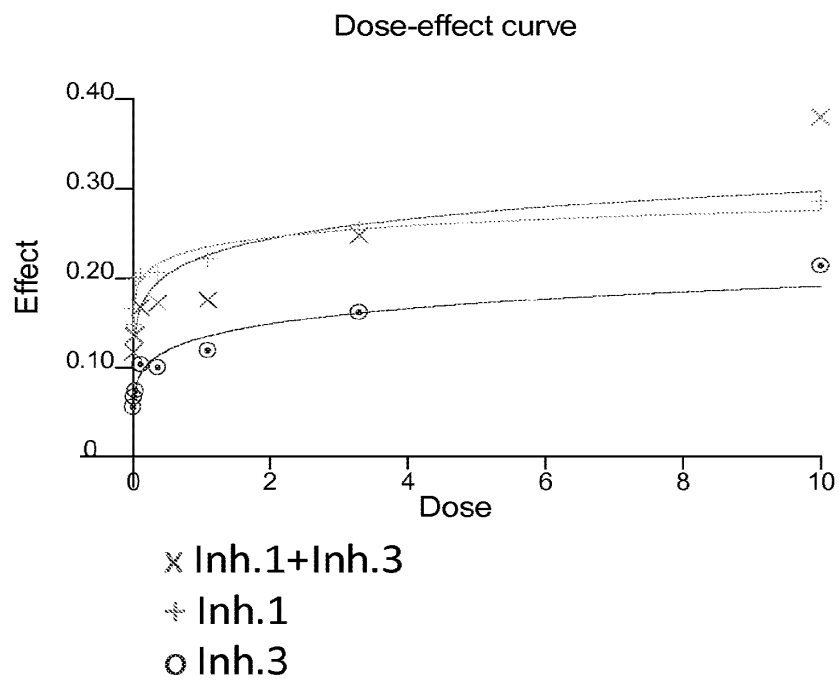


FIG. 15

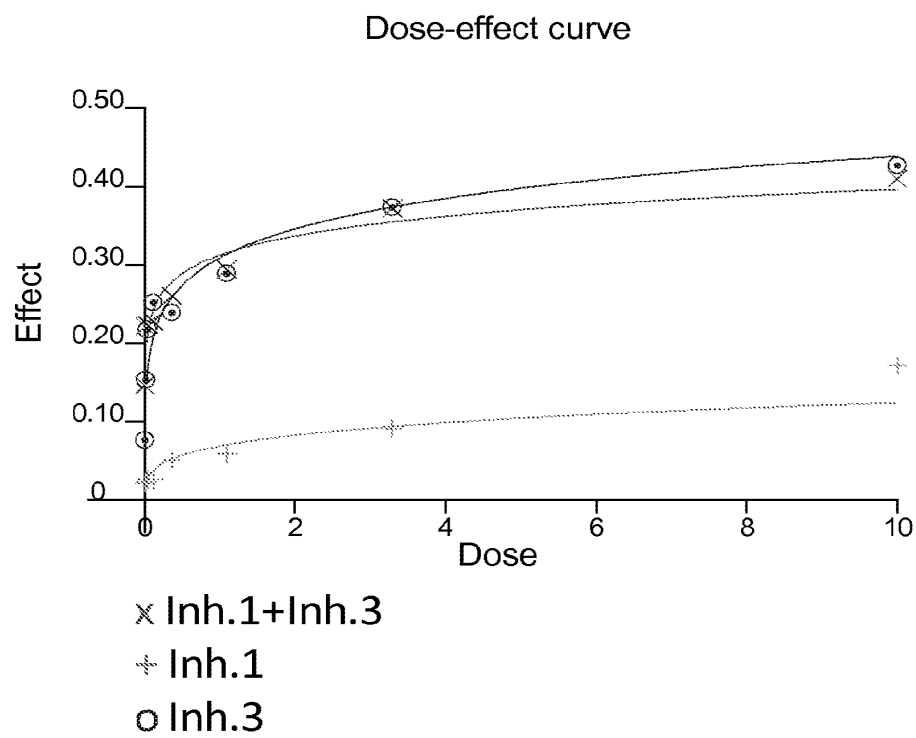


FIG. 16

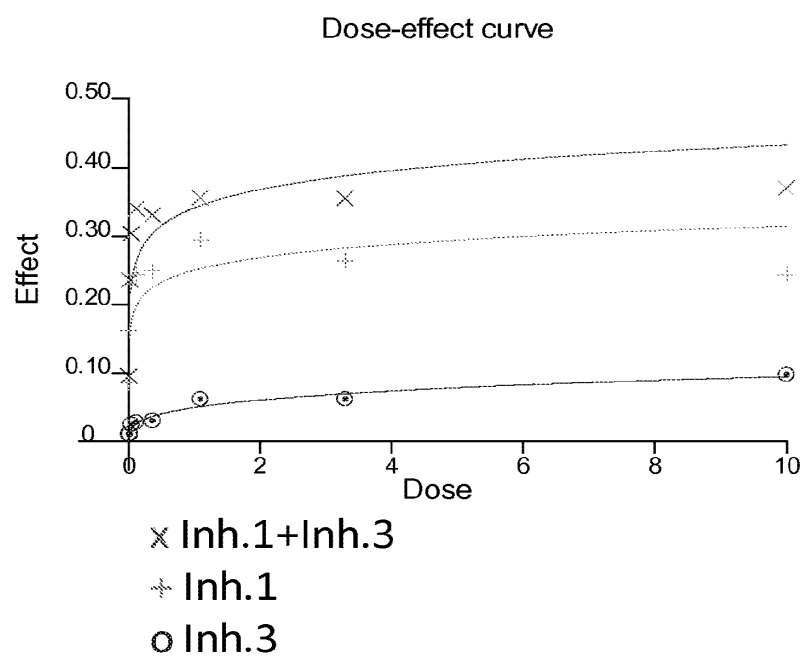


FIG. 17

18/60

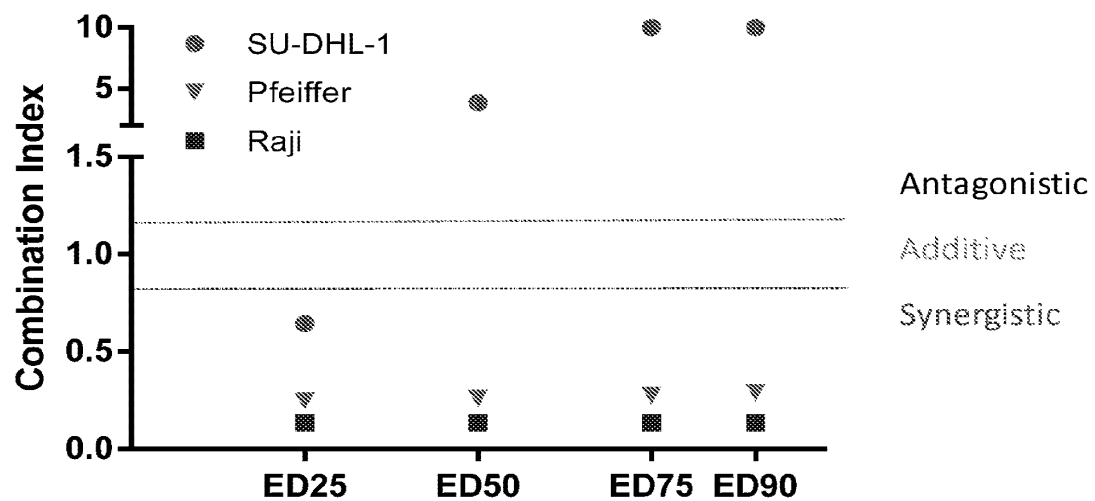


FIG. 18

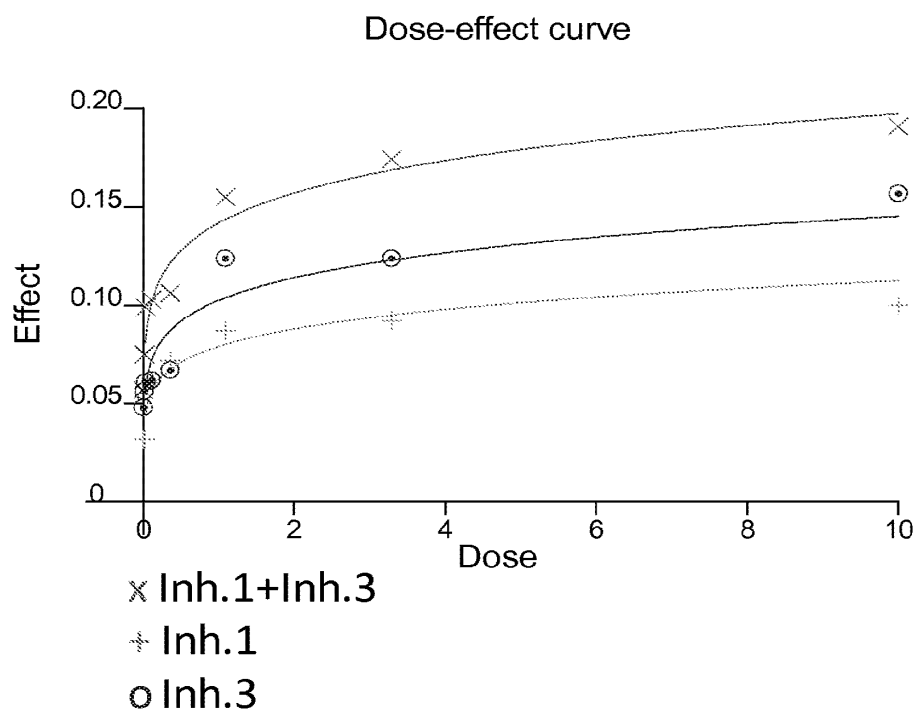


FIG. 19

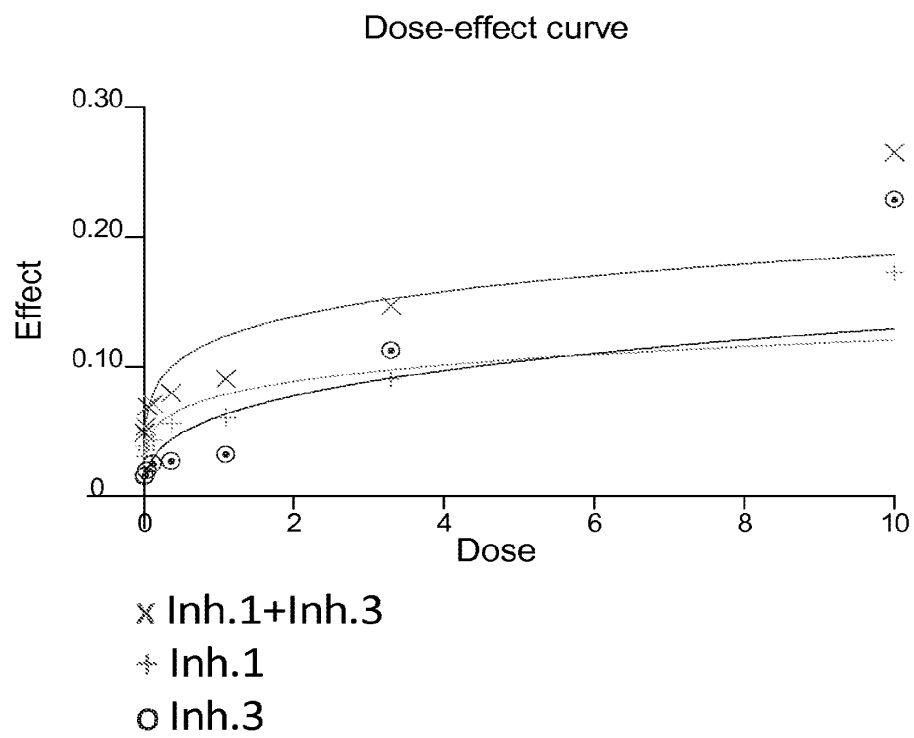


FIG. 20

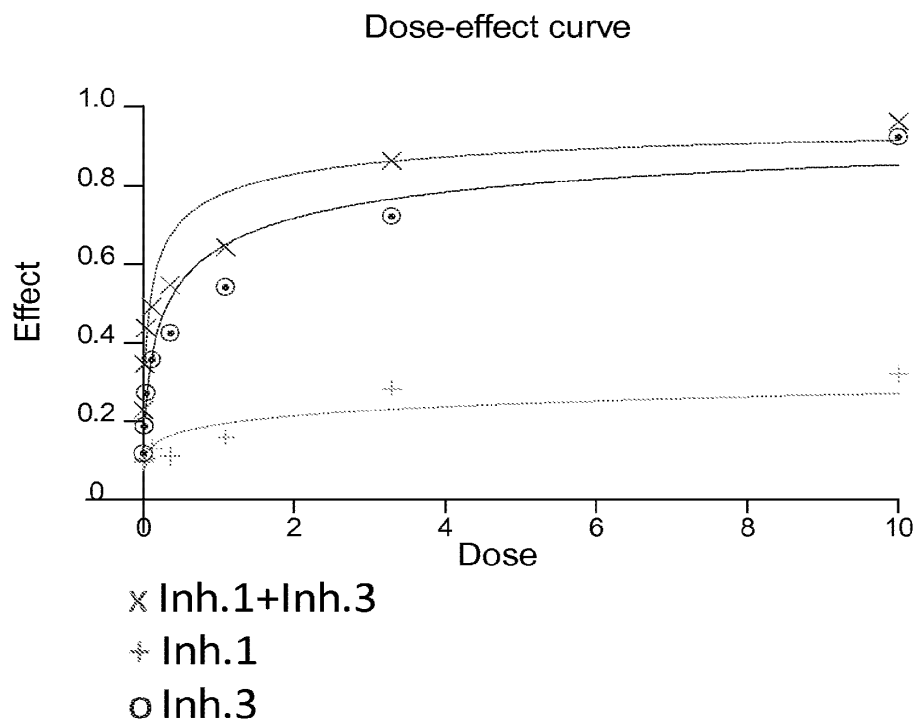


FIG. 21

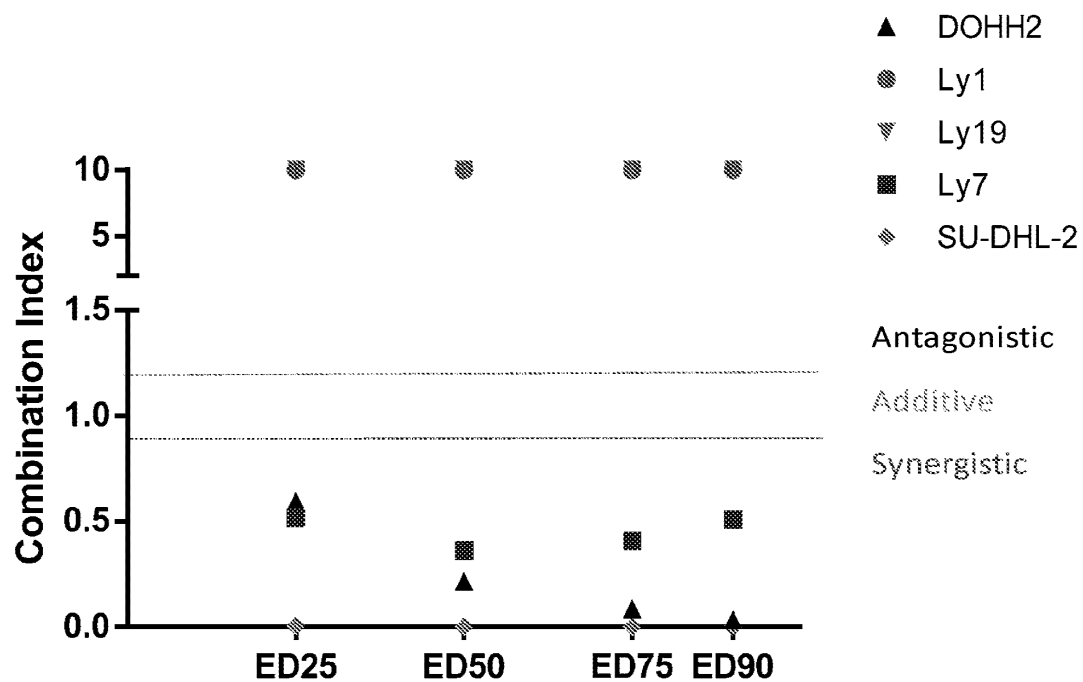


FIG. 22

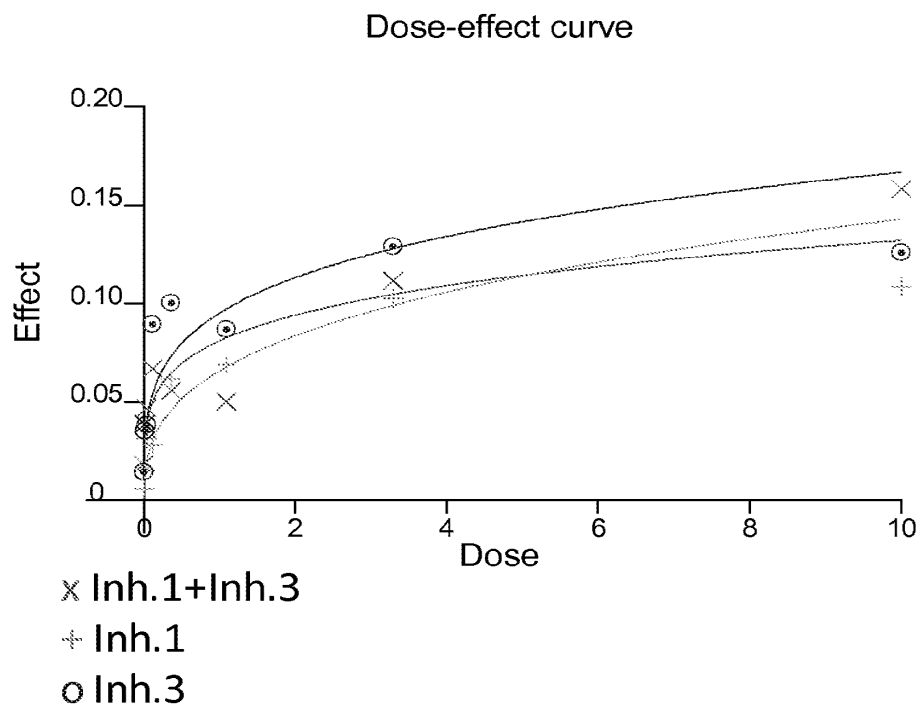


FIG. 23

Dose-effect curve

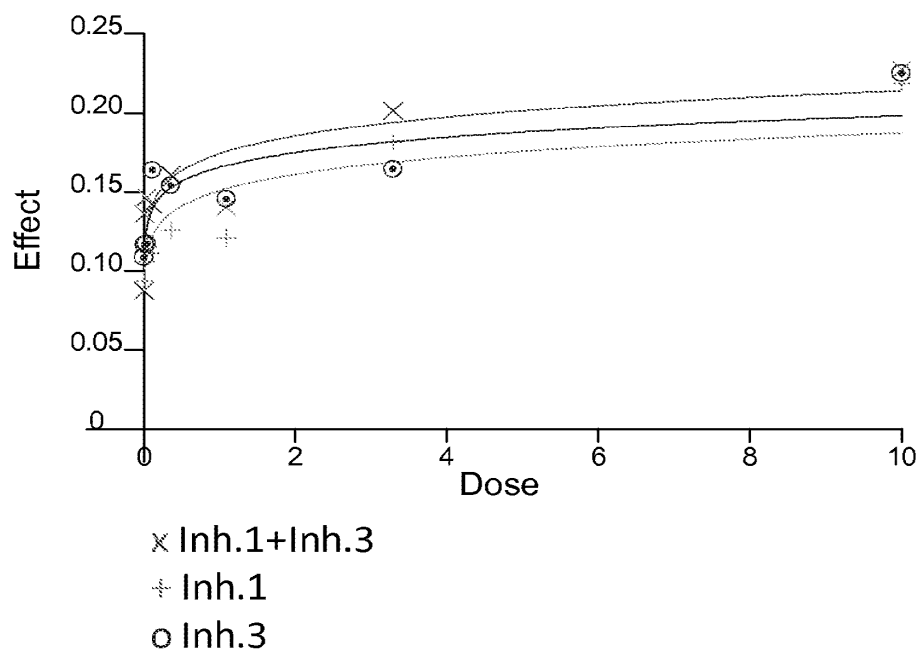


FIG. 24

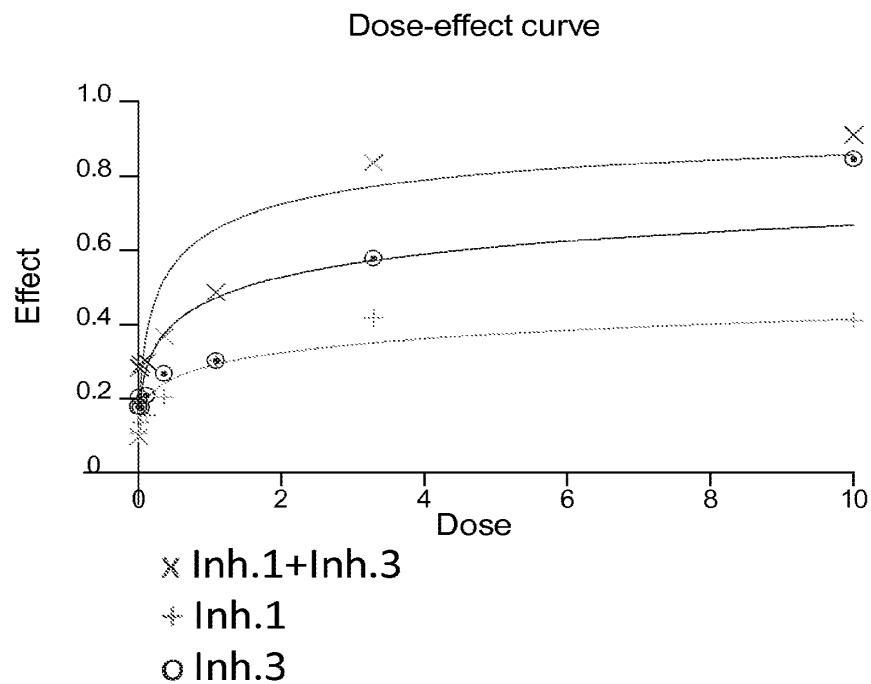


FIG. 25

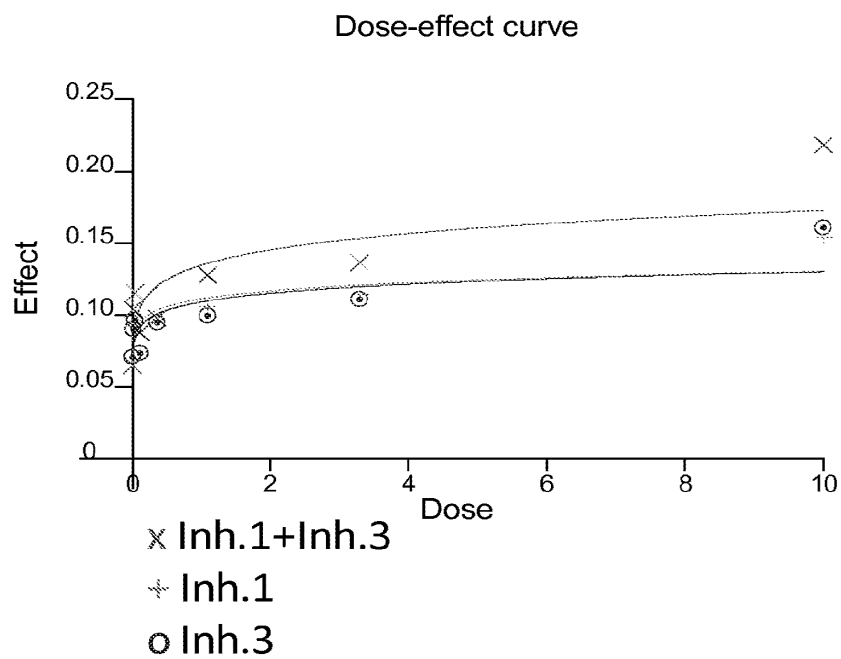


FIG. 26

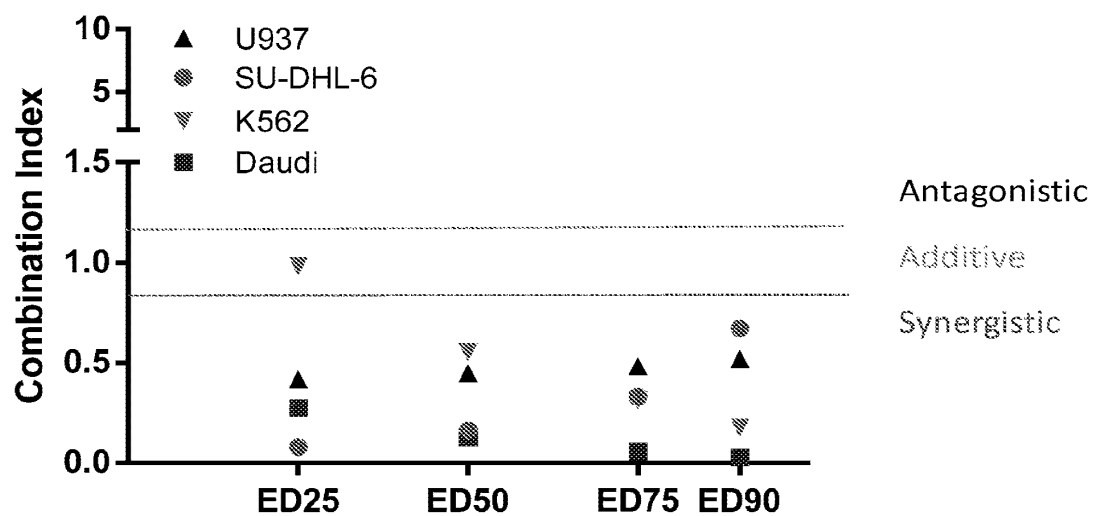


FIG. 27

Dose-effect curve

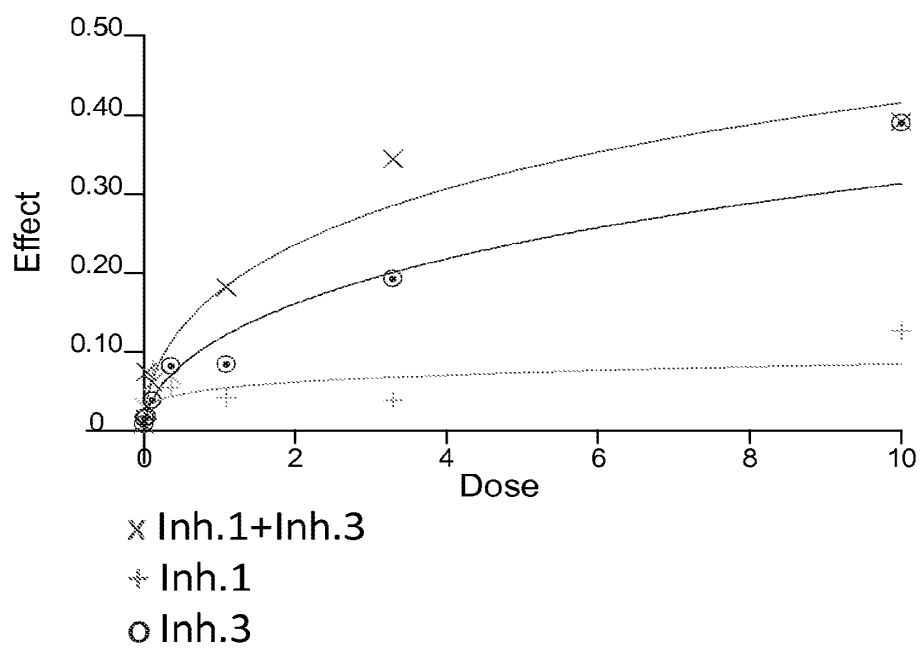


FIG. 28

Dose-effect curve

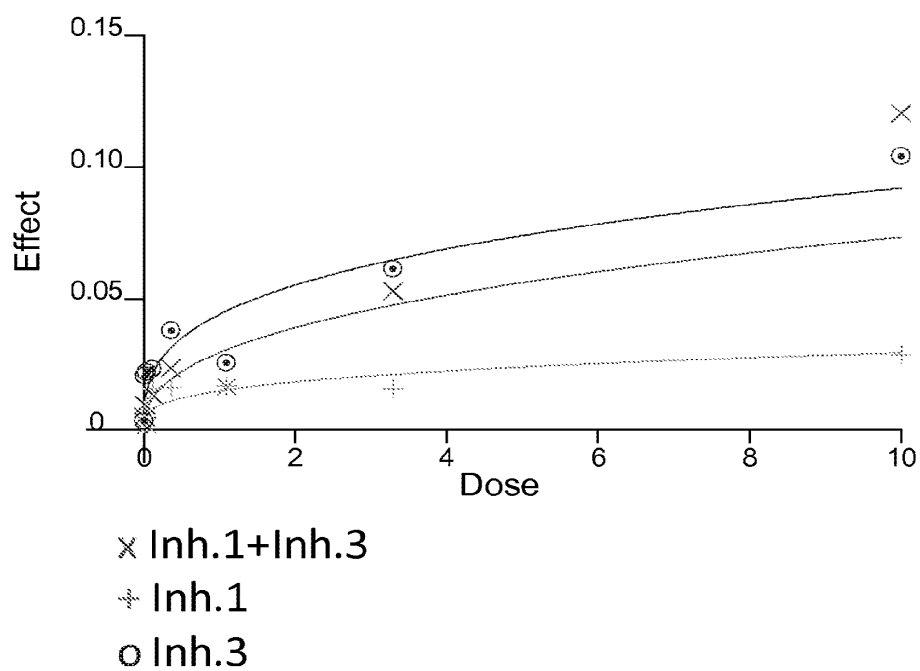


FIG. 29

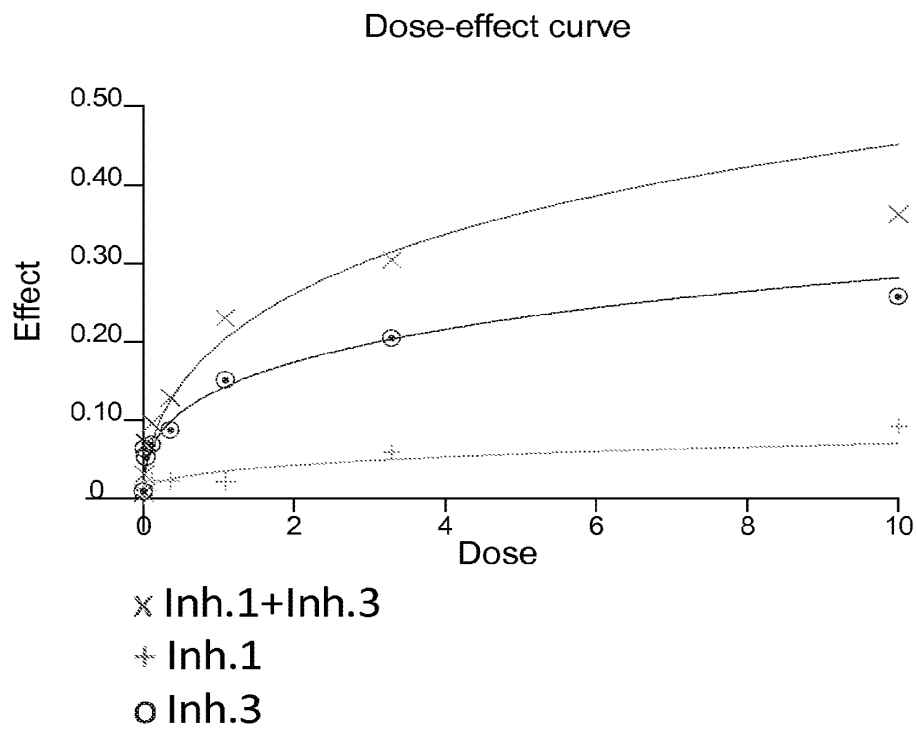


FIG. 30

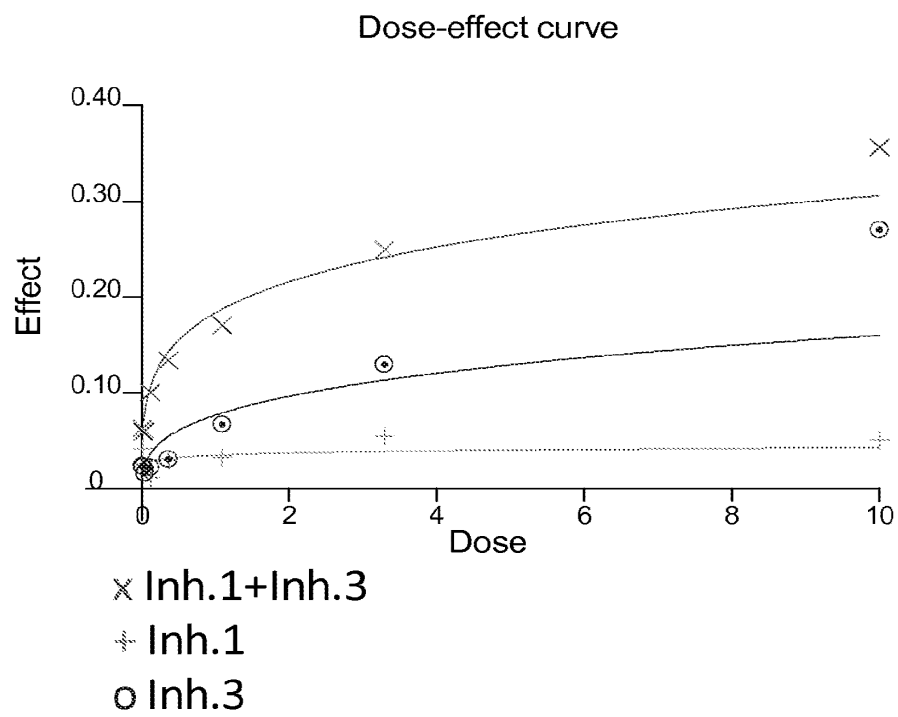


FIG. 31

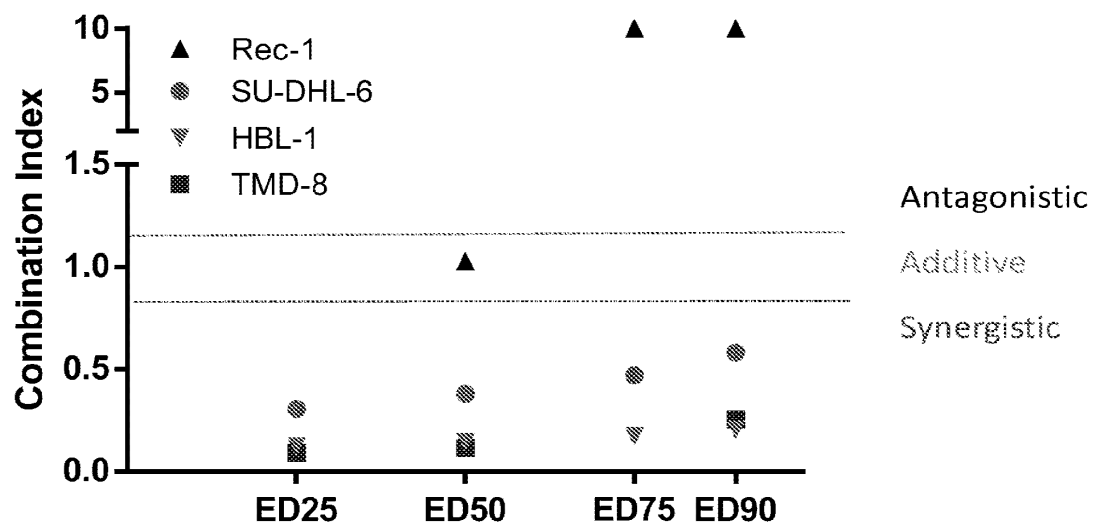


FIG. 32

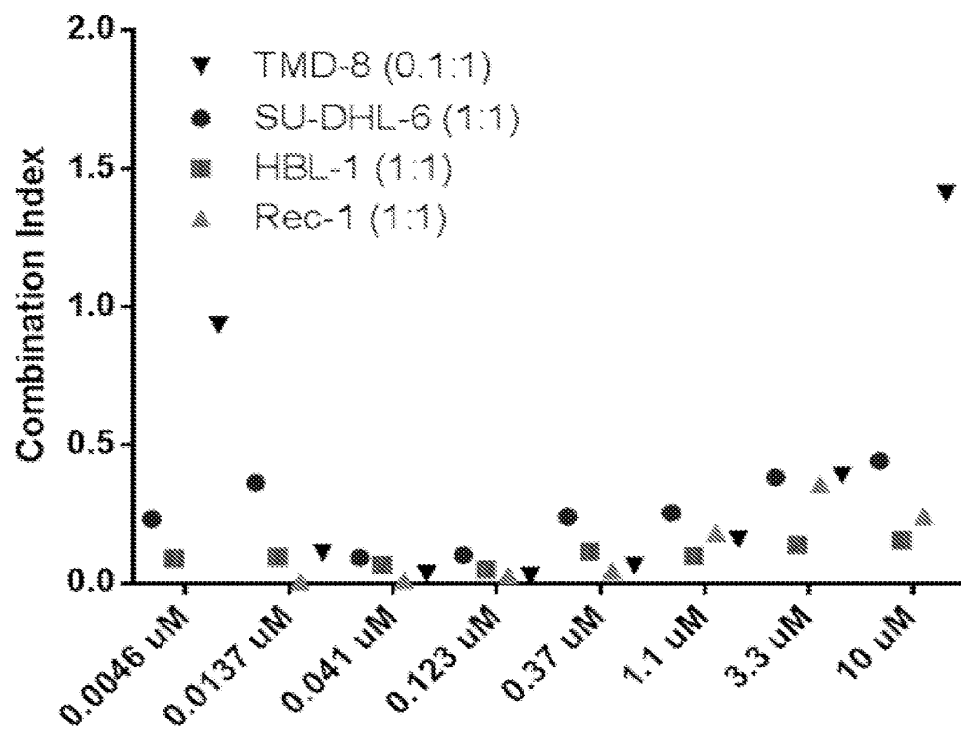


FIG. 33

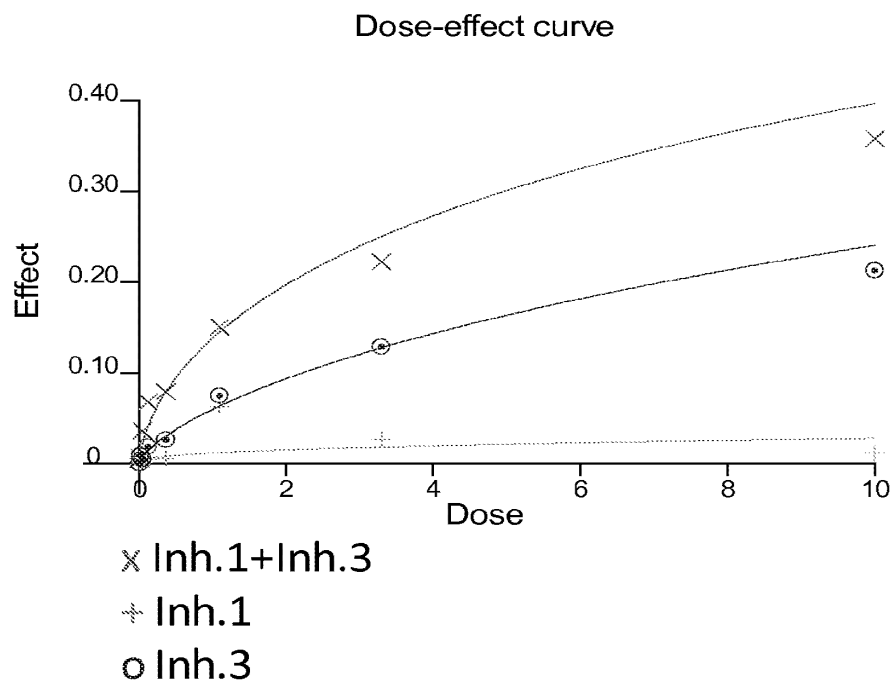


FIG. 34

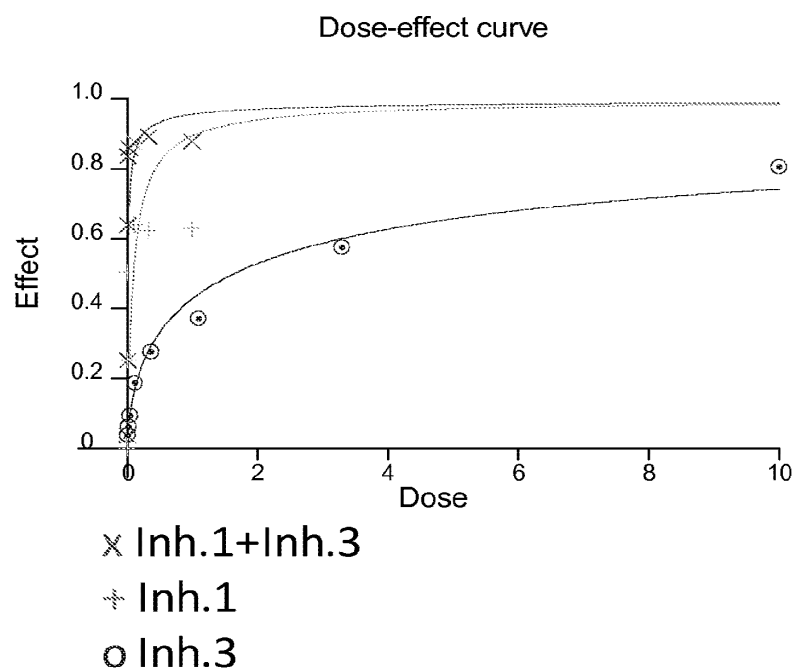


FIG. 35

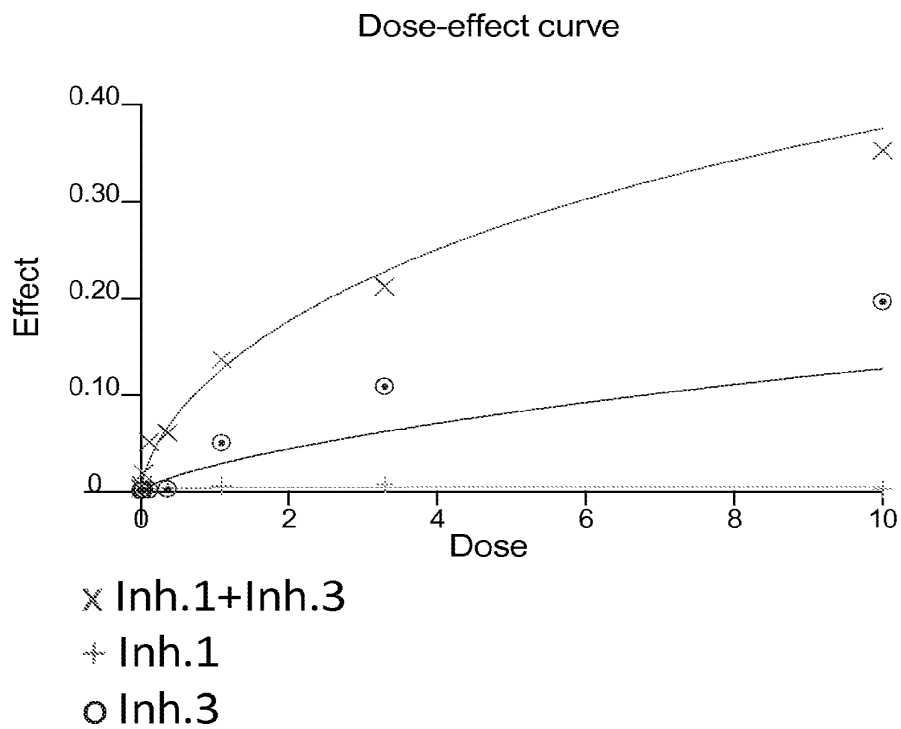


FIG. 36

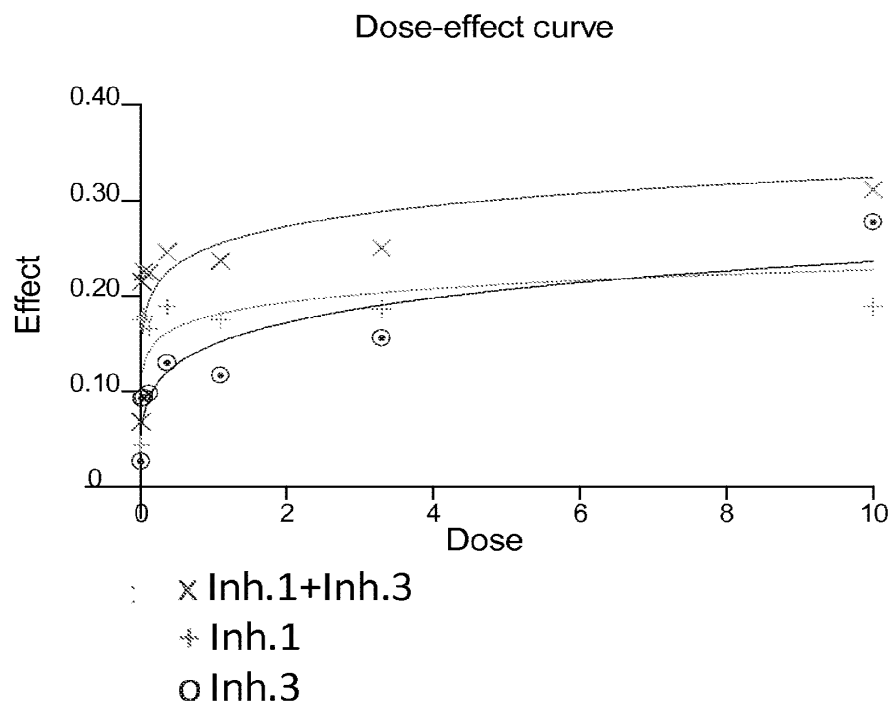


FIG. 37

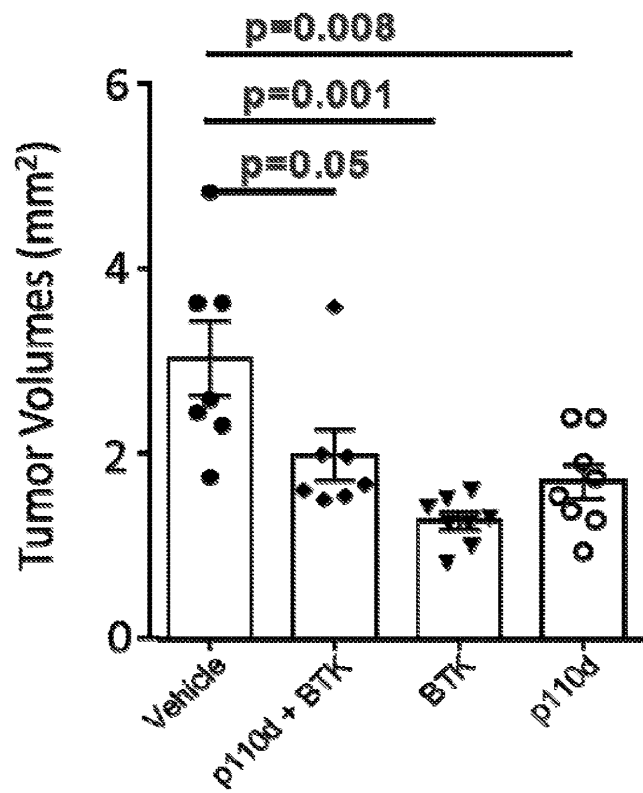


FIG. 38

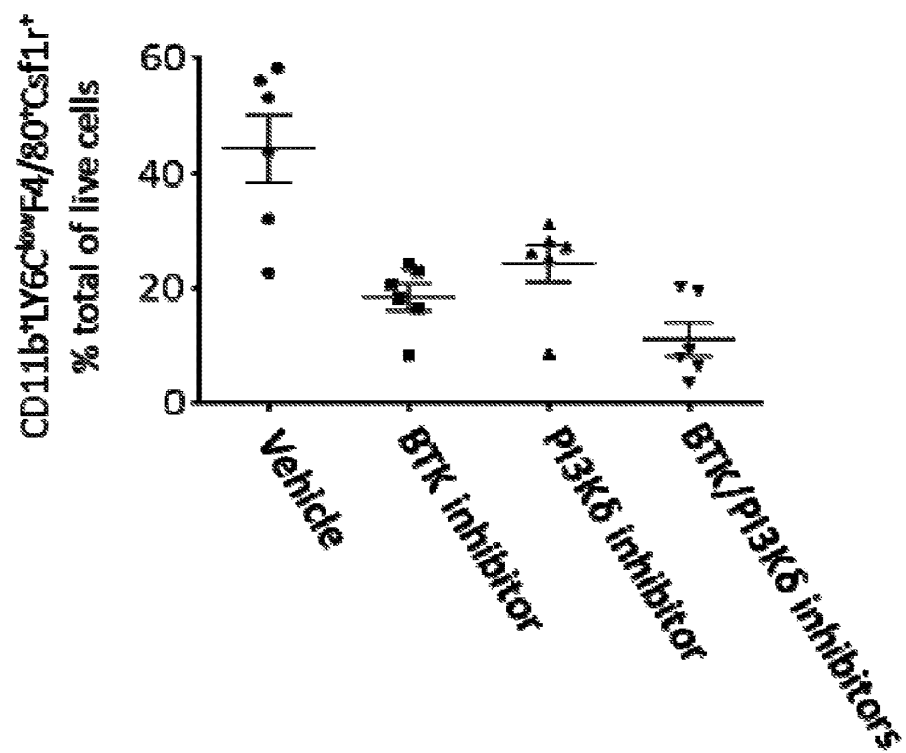


FIG. 39

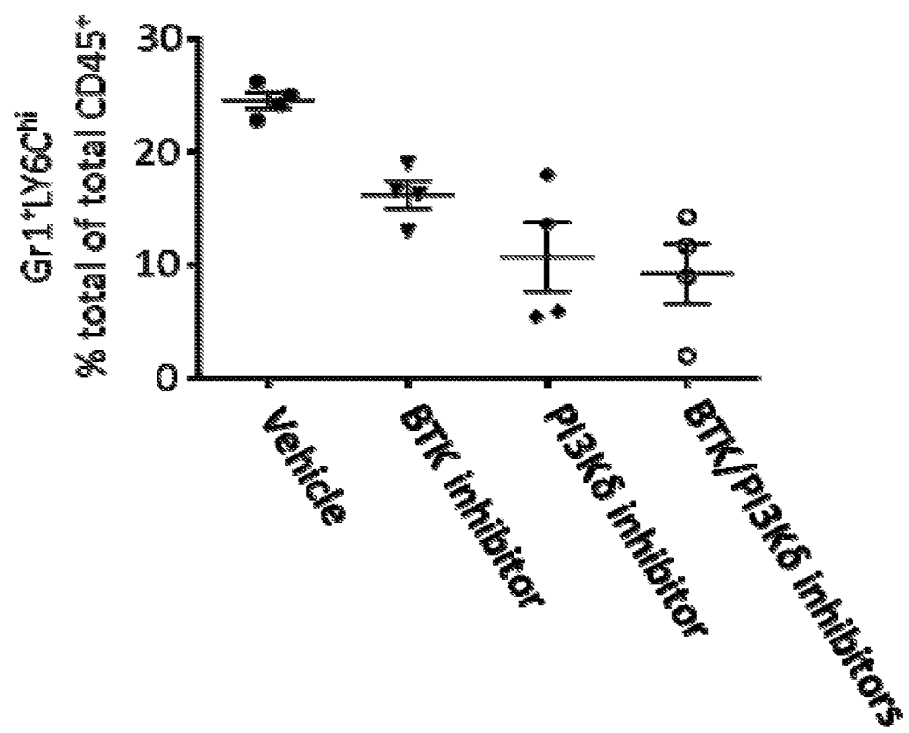


FIG. 40

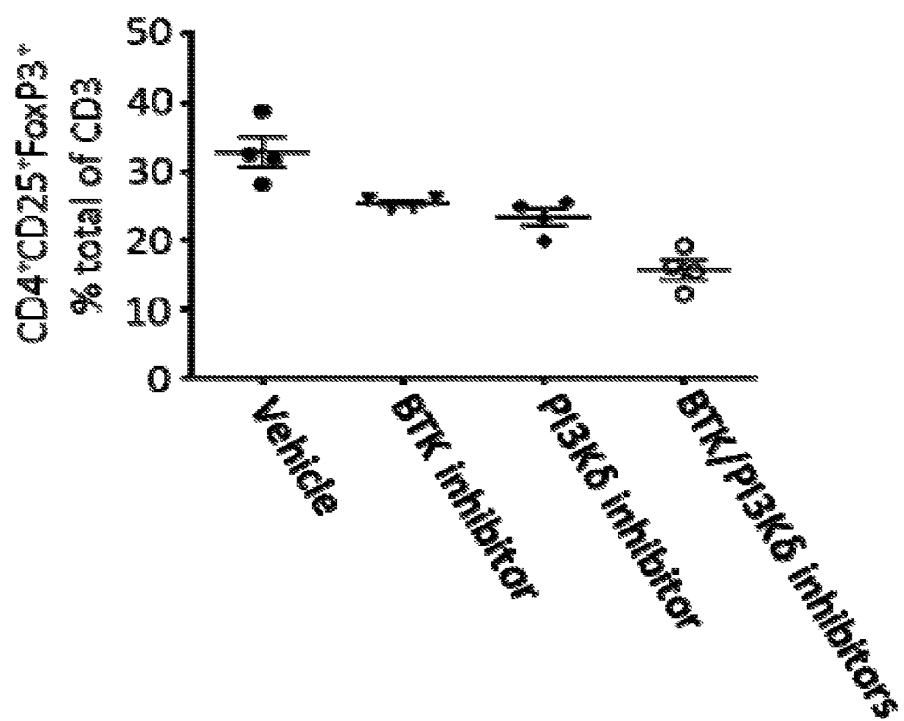


FIG. 41

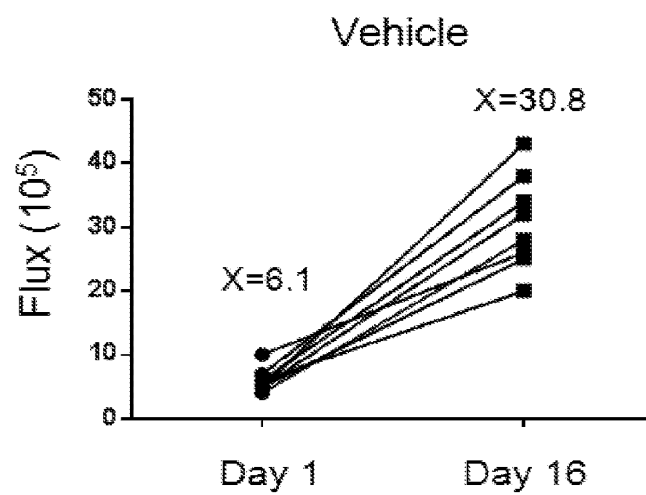


FIG. 42

Formula XVIII

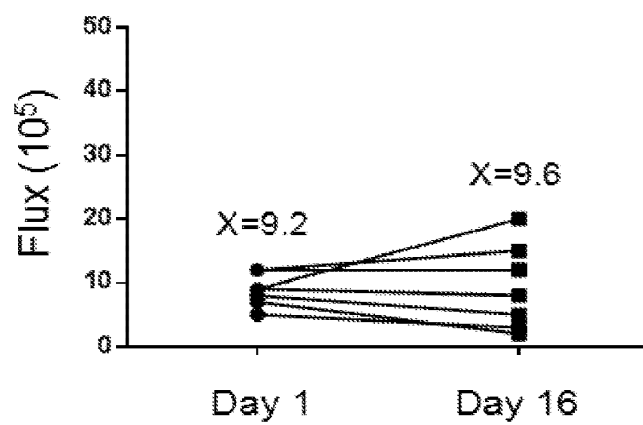


FIG. 43

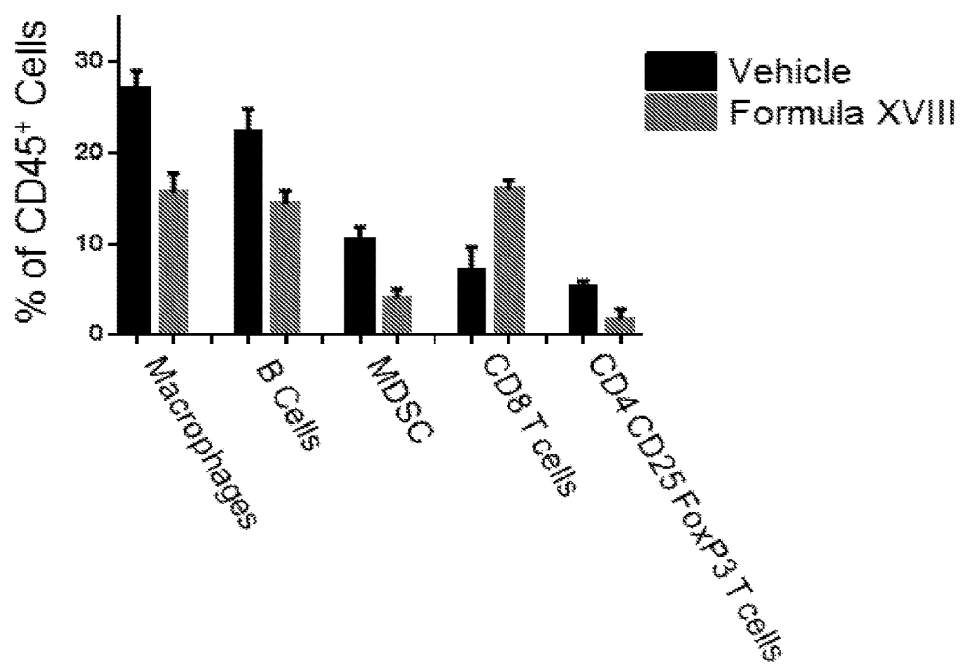


FIG. 44

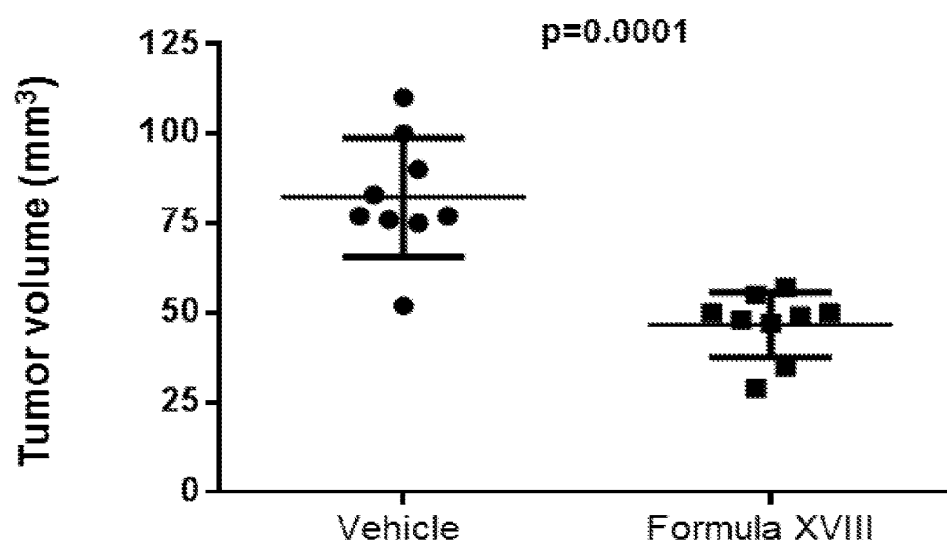


FIG. 45

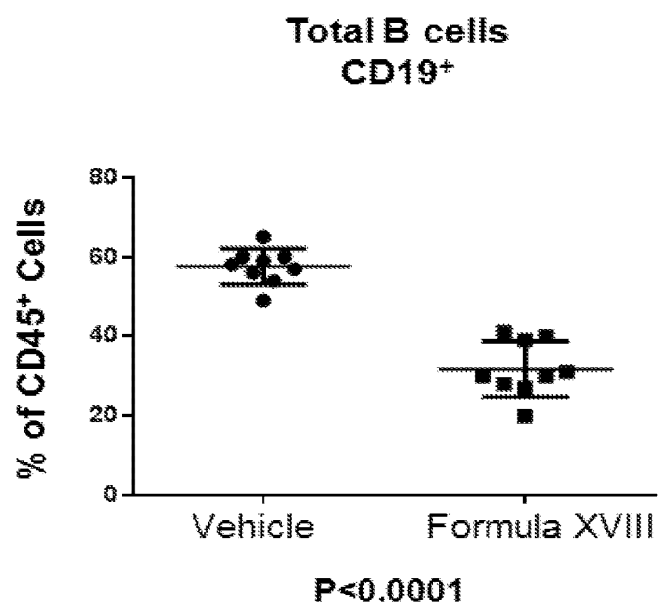


FIG. 46

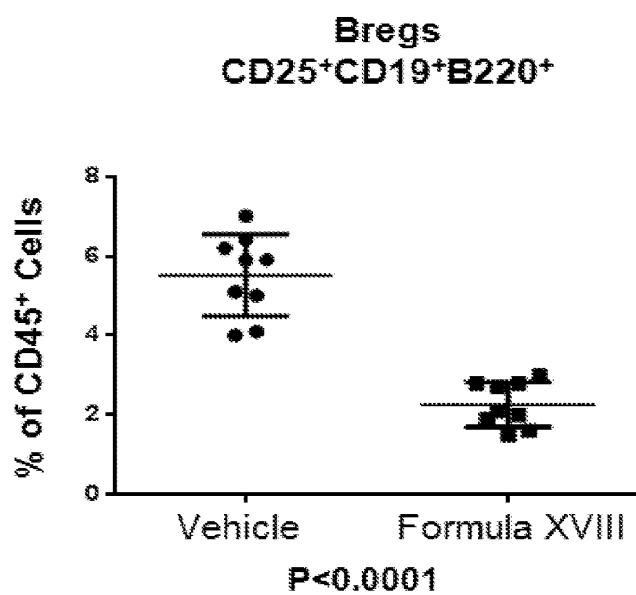


FIG. 47

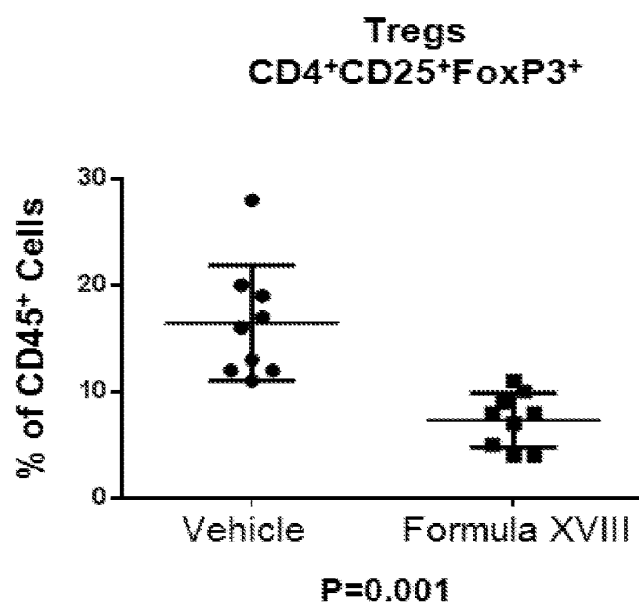


FIG. 48

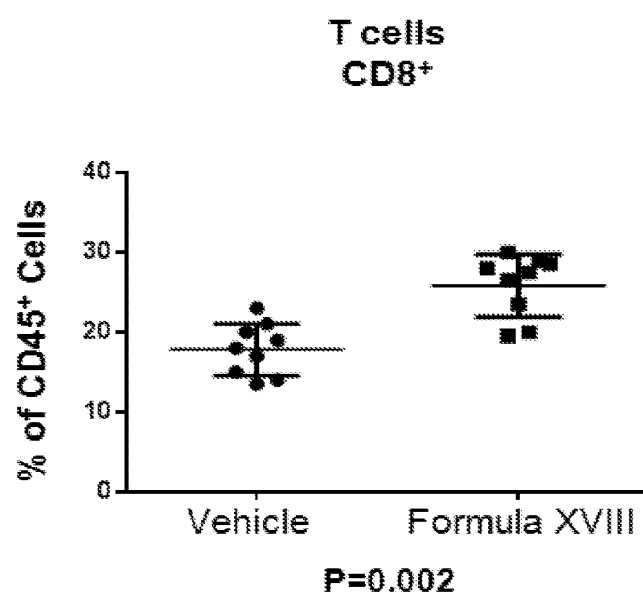


FIG. 49

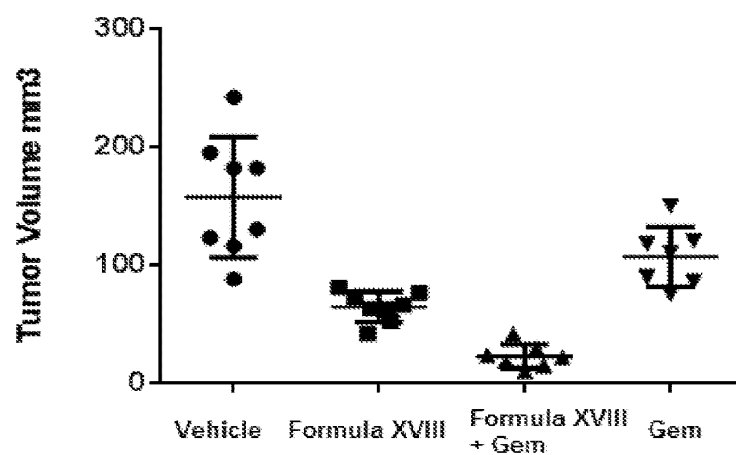


FIG. 50

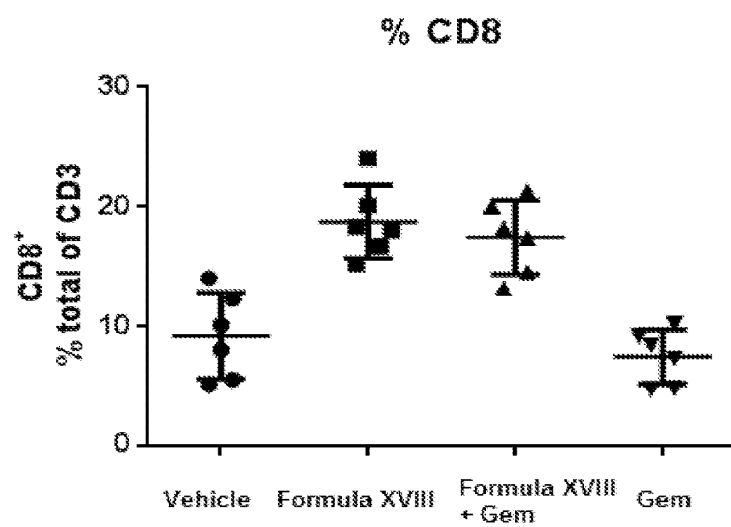


FIG. 51

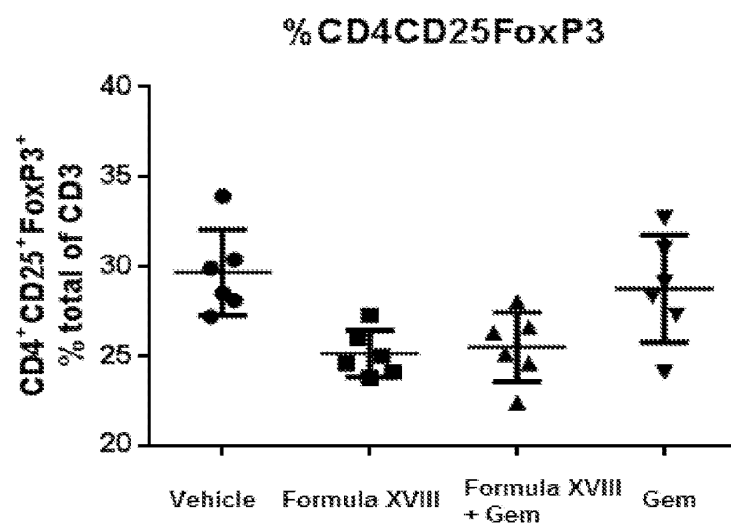


FIG. 52

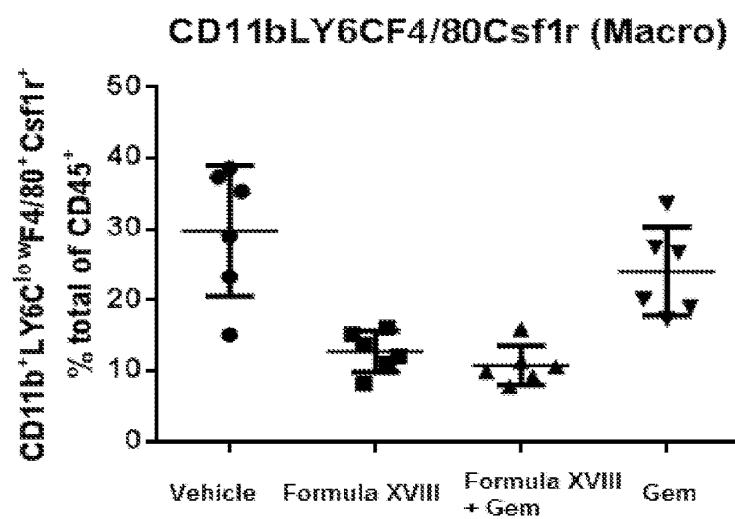


FIG. 53

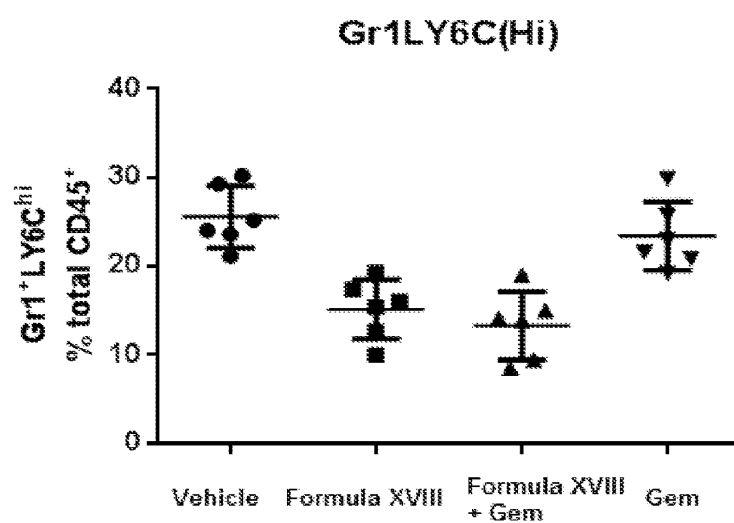


FIG. 54

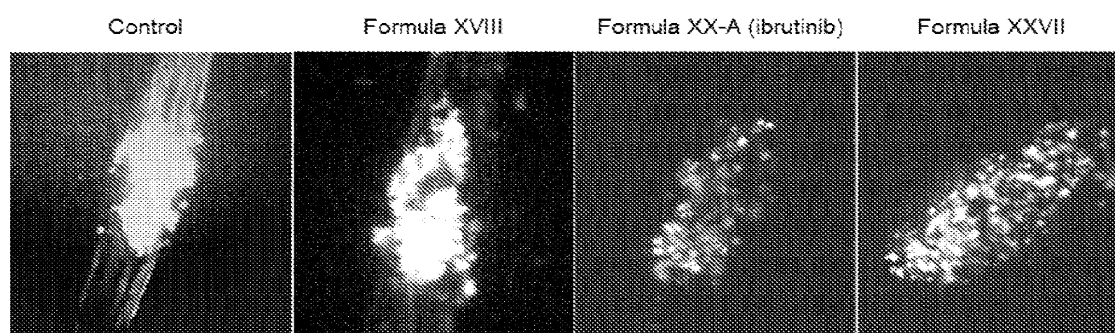


FIG. 55

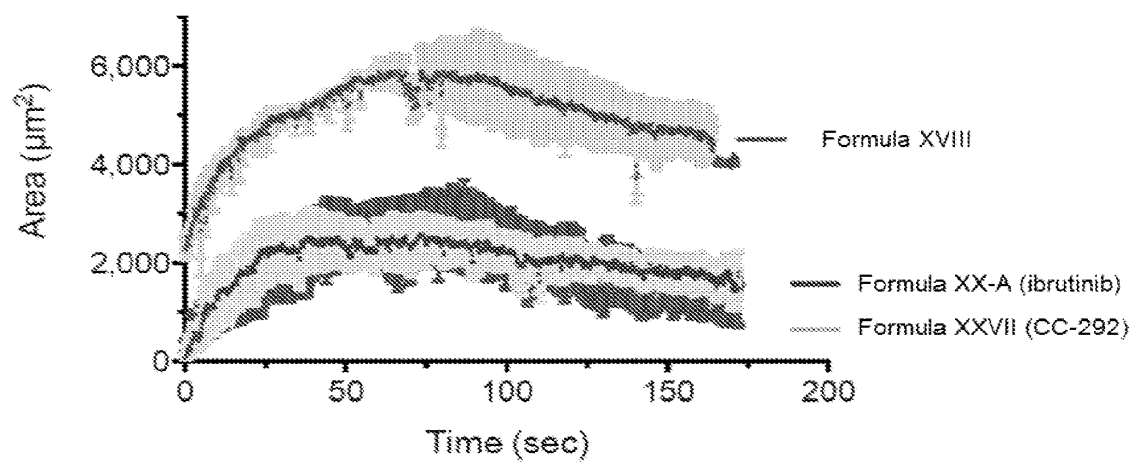


FIG. 56

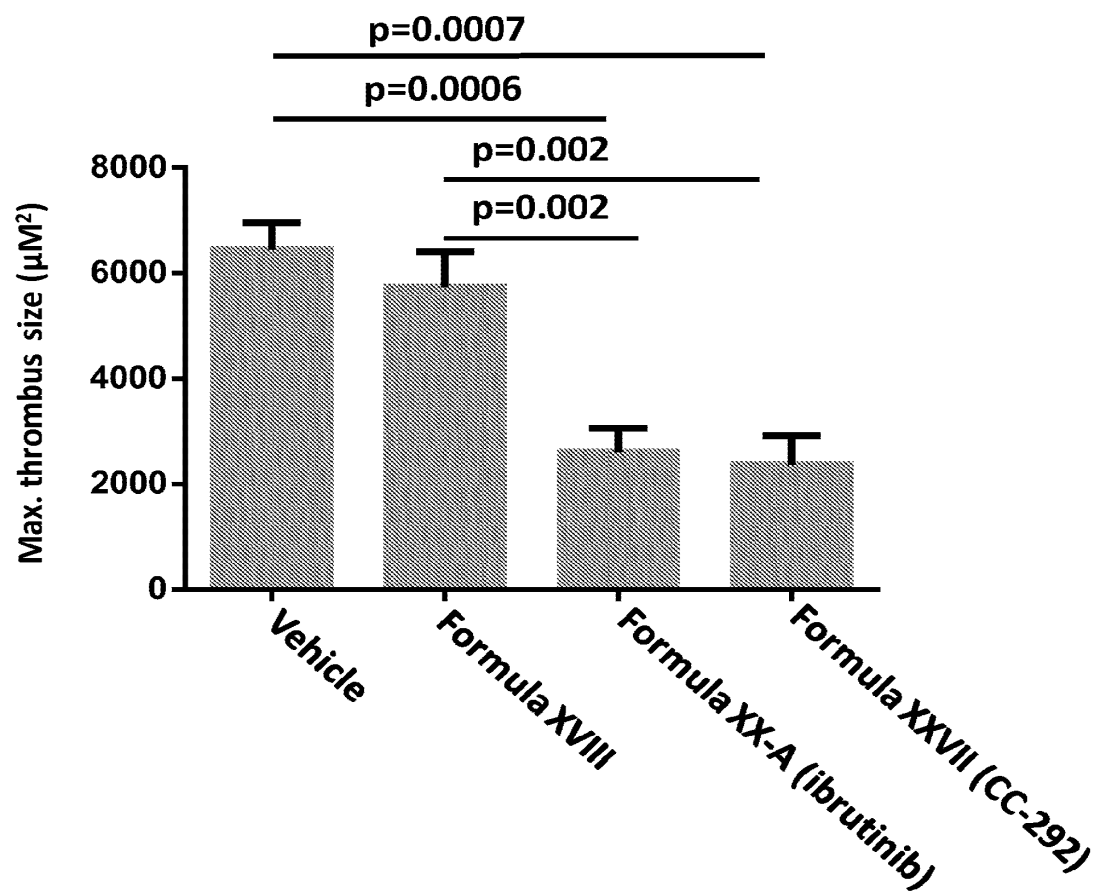


FIG. 57

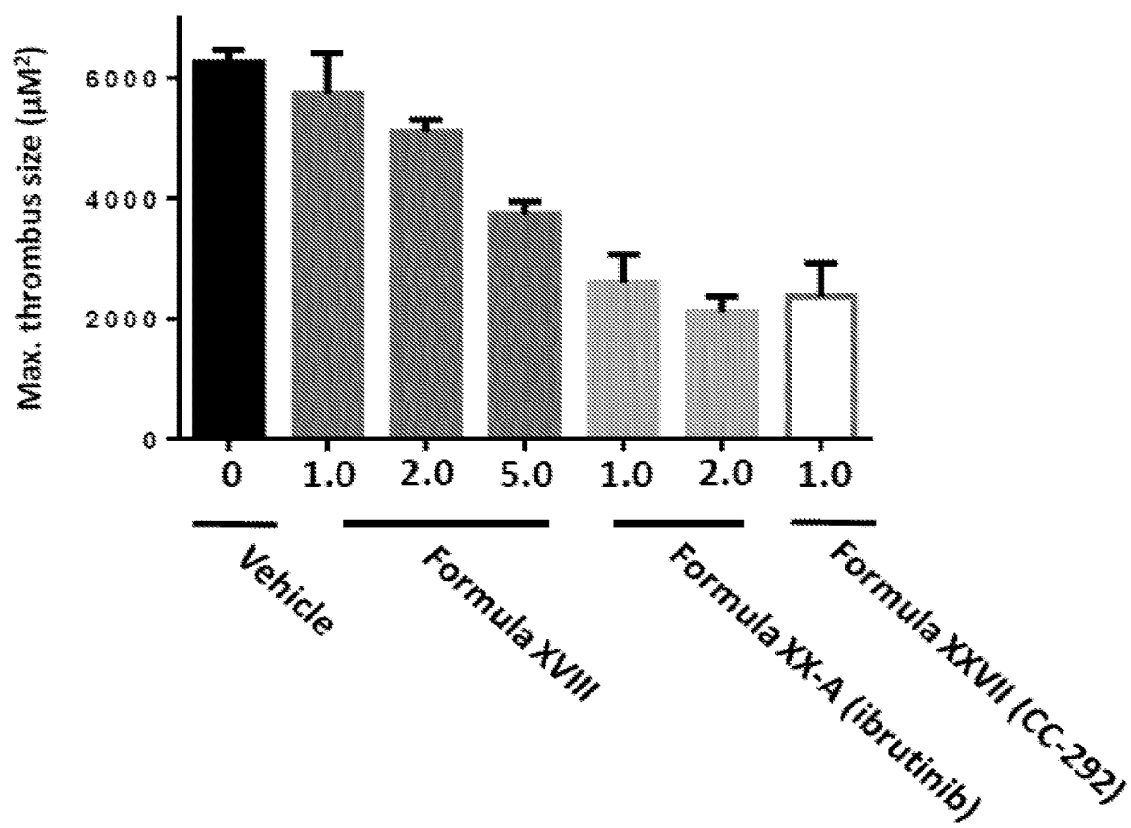


FIG. 58

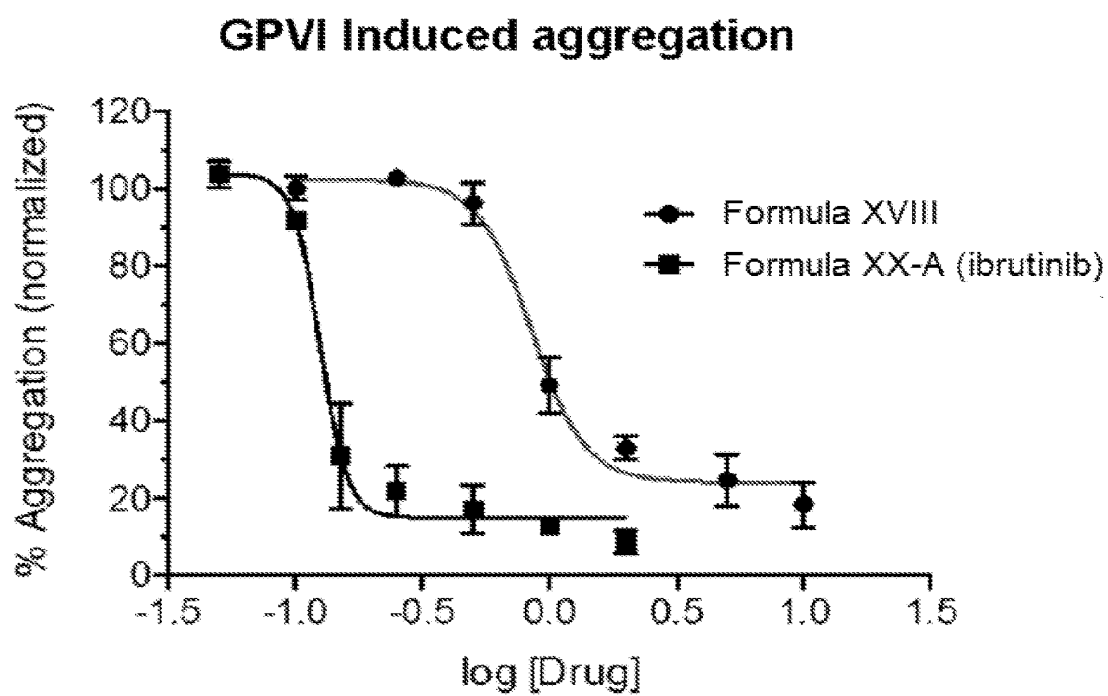


FIG. 59

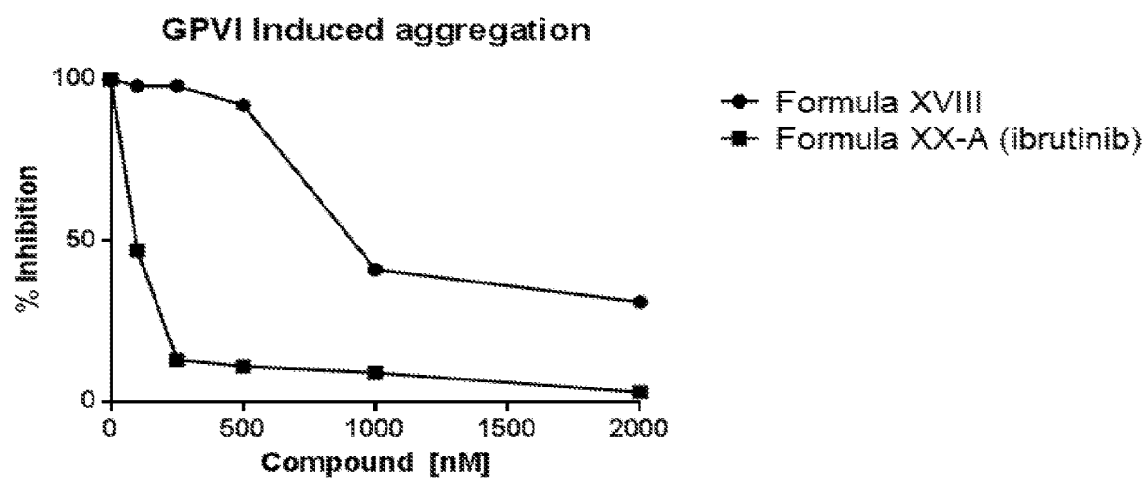


FIG. 60

ABSTRACT

[00306] In some embodiments, the invention includes a therapeutic combination of a phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) inhibitor, including PI3K inhibitors selective for the γ - and δ -isoforms and selective for both γ - and δ -isoforms, and a Bruton's tyrosine kinase (BTK) inhibitor. In some embodiments, the invention includes therapeutic methods of using a BTK inhibitor and a PI3K- δ inhibitor to treat solid tumor cancers by modulation of the tumor microenvironment, including macrophages, monocytes, mast cells, helper T cells, cytotoxic T cells, regulatory T cells, natural killer cells, myeloid-derived suppressor cells, regulatory B cells, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and fibroblasts.

THERAPEUTIC COMBINATION OF A PI3K INHIBITOR AND A BTK INHIBITOR

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

[001] A therapeutic combination of a phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) inhibitor and a Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase (BTK) inhibitor and uses of the therapeutic combination are disclosed herein.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

[002] PI3K kinases are members of a unique and conserved family of intracellular lipid kinases that phosphorylate the 3'-OH group on phosphatidylinositols or phosphoinositides. PI3K kinases are key signaling enzymes that relay signals from cell surface receptors to downstream effectors. The PI3K family comprises 15 kinases with distinct substrate specificities, expression patterns, and modes of regulation. The class I PI3K kinases (p110 α , p110 β , p110 δ , and p110 γ) are typically activated by tyrosine kinases or G-protein coupled receptors to generate PIP3, which engages downstream effectors such as those in the Akt/PDK1 pathway, mTOR, the Tec family kinases, and the Rho family GTPases.

[003] The PI3K signaling pathway is known to be one of the most highly mutated in human cancers. PI3K signaling is also a key factor in disease states including hematologic malignancies, non-Hodgkin lymphoma (such as diffuse large B-cell lymphoma), allergic contact dermatitis, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel diseases, chronic obstructive pulmonary disorder, psoriasis, multiple sclerosis, asthma, disorders related to diabetic complications, and inflammatory complications of the cardiovascular system such as acute coronary syndrome. The role of PI3K in cancer has been discussed, for example, in J. A. Engleman, *Nat. Rev. Cancer* **2009**, 9, 550-562. The PI3K- δ and PI3K- γ isoforms are preferentially expressed in normal and malignant leukocytes.

[004] The delta (δ) isoform of class I PI3K (PI3K- δ) is involved in mammalian immune system functions such as T-cell function, B-cell activation, mast cell activation, dendritic cell function, and neutrophil activity. Due to its role in immune system function, PI3K- δ is also involved in a number of diseases related to undesirable immune response such as allergic reactions, inflammatory diseases, inflammation mediated angiogenesis, rheumatoid arthritis,

auto-immune diseases such as lupus, asthma, emphysema and other respiratory diseases. The gamma (γ) isoform of class I PI3K (PI3K- γ) is also involved in immune system functions and plays a role in leukocyte signaling and has been implicated in inflammation, rheumatoid arthritis, and autoimmune diseases such as lupus.

[005] Downstream mediators of the PI3K signal transduction pathway include Akt and mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR). One important function of Akt is to augment the activity of mTOR, through phosphorylation of TSC2 and other mechanisms. mTOR is a serine-threonine kinase related to the lipid kinases of the PI3K family and has been implicated in a wide range of biological processes including cell growth, cell proliferation, cell motility and survival. Disregulation of the mTOR pathway has been reported in various types of cancer.

[006] In view of the above, PI3K inhibitors are prime targets for drug development, as described in J. E. Kurt and I. Ray-Coquard, *Anticancer Res.* **2012**, 32, 2463-70. Several PI3K inhibitors are known, including those that are PI3K- δ inhibitors, PI3K- γ inhibitors, and PI3K- δ,γ inhibitors.

[007] Bruton's Tyrosine Kinase (BTK) is a Tec family non-receptor protein kinase expressed in B cells and myeloid cells. The function of BTK in signaling pathways activated by the engagement of the B cell receptor (BCR) and FCER1 on mast cells is well established. Functional mutations in BTK in humans result in a primary immunodeficiency disease characterized by a defect in B cell development with a block between pro- and pre-B cell stages. The result is an almost complete absence of B lymphocytes, causing a pronounced reduction of serum immunoglobulin of all classes. These findings support a key role for BTK in the regulation of the production of auto-antibodies in autoimmune diseases.

[008] Other diseases with an important role for dysfunctional B cells are B cell malignancies. The reported role for BTK in the regulation of proliferation and apoptosis of B cells indicates the potential for BTK inhibitors in the treatment of B cell lymphomas. BTK inhibitors have thus been developed as potential therapies, as described in O. Cruz et al., *OncoTargets and Therapy* **2013**, 6, 161-176.

[009] In many solid tumors, the supportive microenvironment (which may make up the majority of the tumor mass) is a dynamic force that enables tumor survival. The tumor

microenvironment is generally defined as a complex mixture of “cells, soluble factors, signaling molecules, extracellular matrices, and mechanical cues that promote neoplastic transformation, support tumor growth and invasion, protect the tumor from host immunity, foster therapeutic resistance, and provide niches for dominant metastases to thrive,” as described in Swartz et al., *Cancer Res.*, **2012**, 72, 2473. Although tumors express antigens that should be recognized by T cells, tumor clearance by the immune system is rare because of immune suppression by the microenvironment. Addressing the tumor cells themselves with e.g. chemotherapy has also proven to be insufficient to overcome the protective effects of the microenvironment. New approaches are thus urgently needed for more effective treatment of solid tumors that take into account the role of the microenvironment.

[0010] The present invention provides the unexpected finding that the combination of a PI3K inhibitor with a BTK inhibitor is effective in the treatment of any of several types of cancers such as leukemia, lymphoma and solid tumor cancers.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

[0011] In an embodiment, the invention provides a composition comprising a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination. This composition is typically a pharmaceutical composition.

[0012] In an embodiment, the invention provides a composition comprising a PI3K- γ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination. This composition is typically a pharmaceutical composition.

[0013] In an embodiment, the invention provides a composition comprising a PI3K- δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination. This composition is typically a pharmaceutical composition.

[0014] In an embodiment, the invention provides a composition comprising a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination. This composition is typically a pharmaceutical composition.

[0015] In an embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0016] In an embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a PI3K- γ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0017] In an embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a PI3K- δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0018] In an embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a PI3K- γ, δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor in combination for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0019] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor. These compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for co-administration of the PI3K inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately.

[0020] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- γ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor. These compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for co-administration of the PI3K- γ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately.

[0021] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- δ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor. These compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for co-administration of the PI3K- δ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately.

[0022] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- γ, δ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor. These compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for co-administration of the PI3K- γ, δ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately.

[0023] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer. The compositions are typically both

pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for use in co-administration of the PI3K inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately, in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0024] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- γ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer. The compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for use in co-administration of the PI3K- γ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately, in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0025] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- δ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer. The compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for use in co-administration of the PI3K- δ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately, in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0026] In an embodiment, the invention provides a kit comprising a composition comprising a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor and a composition comprising a BTK inhibitor for use in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer. The compositions are typically both pharmaceutical compositions. The kit is for use in co-administration of the PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor, either simultaneously or separately, in the treatment of leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer.

[0027] In an embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer in a subject, comprising co-administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor.

[0028] In an embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer in a subject, comprising co-administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K- γ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor.

[0029] In an embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer in a subject, comprising co-administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K- δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor.

[0030] In an embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer in a subject, comprising co-administering to a mammal in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor.

[0031] The BTK inhibitor, in one specific embodiment, is a compound of Formula (XVIII), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. The PI3K inhibitor, in one specific embodiment, is a PI3K- δ inhibitor, in particular a compound of Formula IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. In one specific embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XVIII) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, and the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor, in particular a compound of Formula IX, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

[0032] The foregoing summary, as well as the following detailed description of the invention, will be better understood when read in conjunction with the appended drawings.

[0033] FIG. 1 illustrates the sensitivity of the TMD8 diffuse large B cell lymphoma (DLBCL) cell line to individual treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula XVIII (“Tested Btk Inhibitor”) and the PI3K inhibitor of Formula IX (“Tested PI3K Inhibitor”) and combined treatment with Formula XVIII and Formula IX (“Btki + PI3Ki”) at different concentrations. The concentration of the first agent in the combination (the BTK inhibitor) and the concentration of the individual agents is given on the x-axis, and the concentration of the added PI3K inhibitor in combination with the BTK inhibitor is given in the legend.

[0034] FIG. 2 illustrates the sensitivity of the MINO mantle cell lymphoma cell to individual treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula XVIII (“Tested Btk Inhibitor”) and the PI3K inhibitor of Formula IX (“Tested PI3K Inhibitor”) and combined treatment with Formula XVIII and Formula IX (“Btki + PI3Ki”) at different concentrations. The concentration of the first agent in the combination (the BTK inhibitor) and the concentration of the individual agents is given on

the x-axis, and the concentration of the added PI3K inhibitor in combination with the BTK inhibitor is given in the legend.

[0035] FIG. 3 illustrates the proliferative activity in primary mantle cell lymphoma cells of Formula XVIII (“Tested Btki”) and Formula IX (“Tested PI3Ki”). The percentage viability of cells (“% viability”, y-axis) is plotted versus the concentration of the Formula XVIII (“[Tested Btk Inhibitor]”, x-axis). The concentration of the individual BTK and PI3K inhibitors (i.e. not in combination) are also given on the x-axis.

[0036] FIG. 4 illustrates the interaction index of the combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula XVIII and the PI3K inhibitor of Formula IX in primary mantle cell lymphoma cells.

[0037] FIG. 5 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include Maver-1 (B cell lymphoma, mantle), Jeko (B cell lymphoma, mantle), CCRF (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia), and SUP-B15 (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 6, FIG. 7, FIG. 8, and FIG. 9. ED25, ED50, ED75, and ED90 refer to the effective doses causing 25%, 50%, 75%, and 90% of the maximum biological effect (proliferation).

[0038] FIG. 6 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Maver-1 cell line (B cell lymphoma, mantle) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0039] FIG. 7 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Jeko cell line (B cell lymphoma, mantle) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0040] FIG. 8 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested CCRF cell line (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis

(“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μM .

[0041] FIG. 9 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SUP-B15 cell line (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μM .

[0042] FIG. 10 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include Jeko (B cell lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma) and SU-DHL-4 (activated B cell like (ABC) diffuse large B cell lymphoma). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 11 and FIG. 12.

[0043] FIG. 11 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Jeko cell line (B cell lymphoma, mantle) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μM .

[0044] FIG. 12 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SU-DHL-4 cell line (diffuse large B cell lymphoma, ABC) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μM .

[0045] FIG. 13 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include CCRF (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia), SUP-B15 (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia), JVM-2 (prolymphocytic leukemia), Ramos (Burkitt’s lymphoma), and Mino (mantle cell lymphoma). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 14, FIG. 15, FIG. 16, and FIG. 17. No dose-effect curve is given for Ramos (Burkitt’s lymphoma) because of negative slope.

[0046] FIG. 14 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested CCRF cell line (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0047] FIG. 15 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SUP-B15 cell line (B lymphoblast, acute lymphoblastic leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0048] FIG. 16 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested JVM-2 cell line (prolymphocytic leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0049] FIG. 17 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Mino cell line (mantle cell lymphoma) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0050] FIG. 18 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include Raji (B lymphocyte, Burkitt's lymphoma), SU-DHL-1 (DLBCL-ABC), and Pfeiffer (follicular lymphoma). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 19, FIG. 20, and FIG. 21.

[0051] FIG. 19 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Raji cell line (B lymphocyte, Burkitt's lymphoma) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0052] FIG. 20 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SU-DHL-1 cell line (DLBCL-ABC) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0053] FIG. 21 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Pfeiffer cell line (follicular lymphoma) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0054] FIG. 22 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include Ly1 (Germinal center B-cell like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, DLBCL-GCB), Ly7 (DLBCL-GCB), Ly19 (DLBCL-GCB), SU-DHL-2 (Activated B-cell like diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, DLBCL-ABC), and DOHH2 (follicular lymphoma, FL). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 23, FIG. 24, FIG. 25, and FIG. 26, except for the Ly19 cell line, which is not graphed because of a negative slope.

[0055] FIG. 23 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Ly1 cell line (DLBCL-GCB) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0056] FIG. 24 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Ly7 cell line (DLBCL-GCB) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0057] FIG. 25 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested DOHH2 cell line (FL) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) (“Inh.1”) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) (“Inh.3”). The y-axis (“Effect”) is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis (“Dose”) is given in linear units of μ M.

[0058] FIG. 26 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SU-DHL-2 cell line (DLBCL-ABC) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0059] FIG. 27 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when Formula (XVIII) and Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include U937 (histiocytic lymphoma and/or myeloid), K562 (leukemia, myeloid, and/or chronic myelogenous leukemia), Daudi (human Burkitt's lymphoma), and SU-DHL-6 (DLBCL-GCB and/or peripheral T-cell lymphoma, PTCL). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 28, FIG. 29, FIG. 30, and FIG. 31.

[0060] FIG. 28 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested U937 cell line (histiocytic lymphoma and/or myeloid) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0061] FIG. 29 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested K562 cell line (leukemia, myeloid, and/or chronic myelogenous leukemia) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0062] FIG. 30 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Daudi cell line (human Burkitt's lymphoma) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0063] FIG. 31 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SU-DHL-6 cell line (DLBCL-GCB and/or PTCL) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0064] FIG. 32 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include SU-DHL-6 (DLBCL-GCB or PTCL), TMD-8 (DLBCL-ABC), HBL-1 (DLBCL-ABC), and Rec-1 (follicular lymphoma). The dose-effect curves for these cell lines are given in FIG. 34, FIG. 35, FIG. 36, and FIG. 37.

[0065] FIG. 33 illustrates the synergy observed in certain cell lines when the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) are combined. The tested cell lines include SU-DHL-6 (DLBCL-GCB or PTCL), TMD-8 (DLBCL-ABC), HBL-1 (DLBCL-ABC), and Rec-1 (follicular lymphoma). All corresponding CIs are shown for each of the combinations tested as listed on the x axis.

[0066] FIG. 34 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested SU-DHL-6 cell line (DLBCL-GCB or PTCL) cell line using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0067] FIG. 35 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested TMD-8 cell line (DLBCL-ABC) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0068] FIG. 36 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested HBL-1 cell line (DLBCL-ABC) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0069] FIG. 37 illustrates the dose-effect curves obtained for the tested Rec-1 cell line (follicular lymphoma) using combined dosing of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) ("Inh.1") and the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX) ("Inh.3"). The y-axis ("Effect") is given in units of Fa (fraction affected) and the x-axis ("Dose") is given in linear units of μ M.

[0070] FIG. 38 illustrates tumor growth suppression in an orthotopic pancreatic cancer model. Mice were dosed orally with 15 mg/kg of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), 15 mg/kg of the

PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX), or a combination of both drugs. The statistical p-value (presumption against null hypothesis) is shown for each tested single agent and for the combination against the vehicle.

[0071] FIG. 39 illustrates the effects of oral dosing with 15 mg/kg of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), 15 mg/kg of the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX), or a combination of both inhibitors on myeloid tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) in pancreatic tumor-bearing mice.

[0072] FIG. 40 illustrates the effects of oral dosing with 15 mg/kg of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), 15 mg/kg of the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX), or a combination of both inhibitors on myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) in pancreatic tumor-bearing mice.

[0073] FIG. 41 illustrates the effects of oral dosing with 15 mg/kg of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), 15 mg/kg of the PI3K- δ inhibitor of Formula (IX), or a combination of both inhibitors on regulatory T cells (Tregs) in pancreatic tumor-bearing mice.

[0074] FIG. 42 illustrates the effects of vehicle on flux at two timepoints, as a control for comparison with FIG. 100, in the ID8 syngeneic orthotropic ovarian cancer model.

[0075] FIG. 43 illustrates the effects of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) on flux at two timepoints, for comparison with FIG. 99, in the ID8 syngeneic orthotropic ovarian cancer model.

[0076] FIG. 44 illustrates tumor response to treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) correlates with a significant reduction in immunosuppressive tumor associated lymphocytes in tumor-bearing mice, in comparison to a control (vehicle).

[0077] FIG. 45 illustrates that treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) impairs ID8 ovarian cancer growth in the syngeneic murine model in comparison to a control (vehicle).

[0078] FIG. 46 illustrates that treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) induces a tumor response that correlates with a significant reduction in total B cells in tumor-bearing mice.

[0079] FIG. 47 illustrates that treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) induces a tumor response that correlates with a significant reduction in B regulatory cells (Bregs) in tumor-bearing mice.

[0080] FIG. 48 illustrates that treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) induces a tumor response that correlates with a significant reduction in immunosuppressive tumor

associated Tregs.

[0081] FIG. 49 illustrates that treatment with the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) induces a tumor response that correlates with an increase in CD8⁺ T cells.

[0082] FIG. 50 illustrates the effects on tumor volume of vehicle (measured in mm³) of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), a combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and gemcitabine (“Gem”), and gemcitabine alone.

[0083] FIG. 51 illustrates the effects on the amount of CD8⁺ T cells, given as a percentage of cells expressing the T cell receptor (CD3), of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), a combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and gemcitabine (“Gem”), and gemcitabine alone.

[0084] FIG. 52 illustrates the effects on the percentage of CD4⁺, CD25⁺, and FoxP3⁺ T regulatory cells (“Tregs”), given as a percentage of cells expressing the T cell receptor (CD3), of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), a combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and gemcitabine (“Gem”), and gemcitabine alone.

[0085] FIG. 53 illustrates the effects on the percentage of CD11b⁺, LY6C^{low}, F4/80⁺, and Csf1r⁺ tumor-associated macrophages (“TAMs”), given as a percentage of cells expressing the T cell receptor (CD3), of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), a combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and gemcitabine (“Gem”), and gemcitabine alone.

[0086] FIG. 54 illustrates the effects on the percentage of Gr1⁺ and LY6C^{hi}, F4/80⁺, and Csf1r⁺ myeloid-derived suppressor cells (“MDSCs”), given as a percentage of cells expressing the T cell receptor (CD3), of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII), a combination of the BTK inhibitor of Formula (XVIII) and gemcitabine (“Gem”), and gemcitabine alone.

[0087] FIG. 55 illustrates representative photomicrographs and comparison of maximal thrombus size in laser injured arterioles of VWF HA1 mutant mice infused with human platelets in the absence or presence of various BTK inhibitors. Representative photomicrographs are given as a comparison of maximal thrombus size in laser-injured arterioles (1 μM concentrations shown).

[0088] FIG. 56 illustrates a quantitative comparison obtained by *in vivo* analysis of early thrombus dynamics in a humanized mouse laser injury model using three BTK inhibitors at a

concentration 1 μ M.

[0089] FIG. 57 illustrates the effect of the tested BTK inhibitors on thrombus formation. The conditions used were N=4, 3 mice per drug; anti-clotting agents < 2000 μ M². In studies with ibrutinib, 48% MCL bleeding events were observed with 560 mg QD and 63% CLL bleeding events were observed with 420 mg QD, where bleeding event is defined as subdural hematoma, ecchymoses, GI bleeding, or hematuria.

[0090] FIG. 58 illustrates the effect of the concentration of the tested BTK inhibitors on thrombus formation.

[0091] FIG. 59 illustrates the results of GPVI platelet aggregation studies of Formula XVIII (IC₅₀ = 1.15 μ M) and Formula XX-A (ibrutinib, IC₅₀ = 0.13 μ M).

[0092] FIG. 60 illustrates the results of GPVI platelet aggregation studies of Formula XVIII and Formula XX-A (ibrutinib).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

[0093] Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as is commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which this invention belongs.

[0094] The terms “co-administration” and “administered in combination with” as used herein, encompass administration of two or more agents (such as at least one PI3K inhibitor and at least one BTK inhibitor) to a subject (such as a human or a mammal), so that both agents and/or their metabolites are present in the subject at the same time. Agents are also referred to as active ingredients, or active pharmaceutical ingredients, or drugs. Co-administration includes simultaneous administration in separate compositions (also referred to as concurrent administration), administration at different times in separate compositions, or administration in a composition in which both agents are present. Simultaneous administration in separate compositions and administration in a composition in which both agents are present are preferred.

[0095] The term “effective amount” or “therapeutically effective amount” refers to that amount of a compound or combination of compounds as described herein that is sufficient to effect the intended application including, but not limited to, disease treatment. A therapeutically effective amount may vary depending upon the intended application (*in vitro* or *in vivo*), or the subject and

disease condition being treated (*e.g.*, the weight, age and gender of the subject), the severity of the disease condition, the manner of administration, *etc.* which can readily be determined by one of ordinary skill in the art. The term also applies to a dose that will induce a particular response in target cells, (*e.g.*, the reduction of platelet adhesion and/or cell migration). The specific dose will vary depending on the particular compounds chosen, the dosing regimen to be followed, whether the compound is administered in combination with other compounds, timing of administration, the tissue to which it is administered, and the physical delivery system in which the compound is carried.

[0096] A “therapeutic effect” as that term is used herein, encompasses a therapeutic benefit and/or a prophylactic benefit. A prophylactic effect includes delaying or eliminating the appearance of a disease or condition, delaying or eliminating the onset of symptoms of a disease or condition, slowing, halting, or reversing the progression of a disease or condition, or any combination thereof.

[0097] The term “pharmaceutically acceptable salt” refers to salts derived from a variety of organic and inorganic counter ions known in the art. Pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts can be formed with inorganic acids and organic acids. Inorganic acids from which salts can be derived include, for example, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid and phosphoric acid. Organic acids from which salts can be derived include, for example, acetic acid, propionic acid, glycolic acid, pyruvic acid, oxalic acid, maleic acid, malonic acid, succinic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, benzoic acid, cinnamic acid, mandelic acid, methanesulfonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid and salicylic acid. Pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salts can be formed with inorganic and organic bases. Inorganic bases from which salts can be derived include, for example, sodium, potassium, lithium, ammonium, calcium, magnesium, iron, zinc, copper, manganese and aluminum. Organic bases from which salts can be derived include, for example, primary, secondary, and tertiary amines, substituted amines including naturally occurring substituted amines, cyclic amines and basic ion exchange resins. Specific examples include isopropylamine, trimethylamine, diethylamine, triethylamine, tripropylamine, and ethanolamine. In selected embodiments, the pharmaceutically acceptable base addition salt is chosen from ammonium, potassium, sodium, calcium, and magnesium salts.

[0098] “Pharmaceutically acceptable carrier” or “pharmaceutically acceptable excipient” is intended to include any and all solvents, dispersion media, coatings, antibacterial and antifungal agents, isotonic and absorption delaying agents, and inert ingredients. The use of such pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or pharmaceutically acceptable excipients for active pharmaceutical ingredients is well known in the art. Except insofar as any conventional pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or pharmaceutically acceptable excipient is incompatible with the active pharmaceutical ingredient, its use in the therapeutic compositions of the invention is contemplated. Supplementary active pharmaceutical ingredients, such as other drugs, can also be incorporated into the described compositions and methods.

[0099] “Prodrug” is intended to describe a compound that may be converted under physiological conditions or by solvolysis to a biologically active compound described herein. Thus, the term “prodrug” refers to a precursor of a biologically active compound that is pharmaceutically acceptable. A prodrug may be inactive when administered to a subject, but is converted *in vivo* to an active compound, for example, by hydrolysis. The prodrug compound often offers the advantages of solubility, tissue compatibility or delayed release in a mammalian organism (see, e.g., Bundgaard, H., Design of Prodrugs (1985) (Elsevier, Amsterdam). The term “prodrug” is also intended to include any covalently bonded carriers, which release the active compound *in vivo* when administered to a subject. Prodrugs of an active compound, as described herein, may be prepared by modifying functional groups present in the active compound in such a way that the modifications are cleaved, either in routine manipulation or *in vivo*, to yield the active parent compound. Prodrugs include, for example, compounds wherein a hydroxy, amino or mercapto group is bonded to any group that, when the prodrug of the active compound is administered to a mammalian subject, cleaves to form a free hydroxy, free amino or free mercapto group, respectively. Examples of prodrugs include, but are not limited to, acetates, formates and benzoate derivatives of an alcohol, various ester derivatives of a carboxylic acid, or acetamide, formamide and benzamide derivatives of an amine functional group in the active compound.

[00100] The term “*in vivo*” refers to an event that takes place in a subject's body.

[00101] The term “*in vitro*” refers to an event that takes places outside of a subject's body. *In vitro* assays encompass cell-based assays in which cells alive or dead are employed and may also encompass a cell-free assay in which no intact cells are employed.

[00102] Unless otherwise stated, the chemical structures depicted herein are intended to include compounds which differ only in the presence of one or more isotopically enriched atoms. For example, compounds where one or more hydrogen atoms is replaced by deuterium or tritium, or wherein one or more carbon atoms is replaced by ¹³C- or ¹⁴C-enriched carbons, are within the scope of this invention.

[00103] When ranges are used herein to describe, for example, physical or chemical properties such as weight or chemical formulae, all combinations and subcombinations of ranges and specific embodiments therein are intended to be included. Use of the term “about” when referring to a number or a numerical range means that the number or numerical range referred to is an approximation within experimental variability (or within statistical experimental error), and thus the number or numerical range may vary. The variation is typically from 0% to 10%, preferably from 0% to 10%, more preferably from 0% to 5% of the stated number or numerical range. The term “comprising” (and related terms such as “comprise” or “comprises” or “having” or “including”) encompasses those embodiments such as, for example, an embodiment of any composition of matter, method or process that “consist of” or “consist essentially of” the described features.

[00104] “Alkyl” refers to a straight or branched hydrocarbon chain radical consisting solely of carbon and hydrogen atoms, containing no unsaturation, having from one to ten carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₁-C₁₀alkyl and (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl). Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “1 to 10” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “1 to 10 carbon atoms” means that the alkyl group may consist of 1 carbon atom, 2 carbon atoms, 3 carbon atoms, *etc.*, up to and including 10 carbon atoms, although the definition is also intended to cover the occurrence of the term “alkyl” where no numerical range is specifically designated. Typical alkyl groups include, but are in no way limited to, methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, iso-butyl, sec-butyl isobutyl, tertiary butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl and decyl. The alkyl moiety may be attached to the rest of the molecule by a single bond, such as for example, methyl (Me), ethyl (Et), *n*-propyl (Pr), 1-methylcethyl (iso-propyl), *n*-butyl, *n*-pentyl, 1,1-dimethylcethyl

(*t*-butyl) and 3-methylhexyl. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an alkyl group is optionally substituted by one or more of substituents which are independently alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where *t* is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where *t* is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where *t* is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂ where each R^a is independently hydrogen, unsubstituted alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00105] “Alkylaryl” refers to an -(alkyl)aryl radical where aryl and alkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for aryl and alkyl respectively.

[00106] “Alkylhetaryl” refers to an -(alkyl)hetaryl radical where hetaryl and alkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for aryl and alkyl respectively.

[00107] “Alkylheterocycloalkyl” refers to an -(alkyl) heterocycyl radical where alkyl and heterocycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for heterocycloalkyl and alkyl respectively.

[00108] An “alkene” moiety refers to a group consisting of at least two carbon atoms and at least one carbon-carbon double bond, and an “alkyne” moiety refers to a group consisting of at least two carbon atoms and at least one carbon-carbon triple bond. The alkyl moiety, whether saturated or unsaturated, may be branched, straight chain, or cyclic.

[00109] “Alkenyl” refers to a straight or branched hydrocarbon chain radical group consisting solely of carbon and hydrogen atoms, containing at least one double bond, and having from two to ten carbon atoms (*i.e.*, C₂-C₁₀ alkenyl and (C₂-C₁₀)alkenyl). Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “2 to 10” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “2 to 10 carbon atoms” means that the alkenyl group may consist of 2 carbon atoms, 3 carbon atoms, *etc.*, up to and including 10 carbon atoms. The alkenyl moiety may be attached to the rest of the molecule by a single bond, such as for example, ethenyl (*i.e.*, vinyl), prop-1-enyl (*i.e.*, allyl), but-1-enyl,

pent-1-enyl and penta-1,4-dienyl. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an alkenyl group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which are independently alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where t is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00110] “Alkenyl-cycloalkyl” refers to an (alkenyl)cycloalkyl radical where alkenyl and cycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for alkenyl and cycloalkyl respectively.

[00111] “Alkynyl” refers to a straight or branched hydrocarbon chain radical group consisting solely of carbon and hydrogen atoms, containing at least one triple bond, having from two to ten carbon atoms (*i.e.* C₂-C₁₀ alkynyl and (C₂-C₁₀)alkynyl). Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “2 to 10” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “2 to 10 carbon atoms” means that the alkynyl group may consist of 2 carbon atoms, 3 carbon atoms, *etc.*, up to and including 10 carbon atoms. The alkynyl may be attached to the rest of the molecule by a single bond, for example, ethynyl, propynyl, butynyl, pentynyl and hexynyl. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an alkynyl group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where t is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00112] “Alkynyl-cycloalkyl” refers to an $-(\text{alkynyl})\text{cycloalkyl}$ radical where alkynyl and cycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for alkynyl and cycloalkyl respectively.

[00113] “Carboxaldehyde” refers to a $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{H}$ radical.

[00114] “Carboxyl” refers to a $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OH}$ radical.

[00115] “Cyano” refers to a $-\text{CN}$ radical.

[00116] “Cycloalkyl” refers to a monocyclic or polycyclic radical that contains only carbon and hydrogen, and may be saturated, or partially unsaturated. Cycloalkyl groups include groups having from 3 to 10 ring atoms (*i.e.* $\text{C}_2\text{-C}_{10}$ cycloalkyl and $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_{10})\text{cycloalkyl}$). Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “3 to 10” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “3 to 10 carbon atoms” means that the cycloalkyl group may consist of 3 carbon atoms and greater, up to and including 10 carbon atoms. Illustrative examples of cycloalkyl groups include, but are not limited to the following moieties: cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclopentenyl, cyclohexyl, cyclohexenyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, cyclononyl, cyclodecyl, norbornyl, and the like. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, a cycloalkyl group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, $-\text{OR}^a$, $-\text{SR}^a$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})-\text{R}^a$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^a$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^a$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^a$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^a$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$, $\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{C}(\text{NR}^a)\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^a)\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{R}^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{OR}^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-\text{S}(\text{O})_t\text{N}(\text{R}^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $\text{PO}_3(\text{R}^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00117] “Cycloalkyl-alkenyl” refers to a $-(\text{cycloalkyl})\text{alkenyl}$ radical where cycloalkyl and alkenyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for cycloalkyl and alkenyl, respectively.

[00118] “Cycloalkyl-heterocycloalkyl” refers to a $-(\text{cycloalkyl})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$ radical where cycloalkyl and heterocycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by

one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for cycloalkyl and heterocycloalkyl, respectively.

[00119] “Cycloalkyl-heteroaryl” refers to a -(cycloalkyl)heteroaryl radical where cycloalkyl and heteroaryl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for cycloalkyl and heteroaryl, respectively.

[00120] The term “alkoxy” refers to the group -O-alkyl, including from 1 to 8 carbon atoms of a straight, branched, cyclic configuration and combinations thereof attached to the parent structure through an oxygen. Examples include, but are not limited to, methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, cyclopropyloxy and cyclohexyloxy. “Lower alkoxy” refers to alkoxy groups containing one to six carbons.

[00121] The term “substituted alkoxy” refers to alkoxy wherein the alkyl constituent is substituted (*i.e.*, -O-(substituted alkyl)). Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, the alkyl moiety of an alkoxy group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilanyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where t is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00122] The term “alkoxycarbonyl” refers to a group of the formula (alkoxy)(C=O)- attached through the carbonyl carbon wherein the alkoxy group has the indicated number of carbon atoms. Thus a C₁-C₆ alkoxycarbonyl group is an alkoxy group having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms attached through its oxygen to a carbonyl linker. “Lower alkoxycarbonyl” refers to an alkoxycarbonyl group wherein the alkoxy group is a lower alkoxy group.

[00123] The term “substituted alkoxycarbonyl” refers to the group (substituted alkyl)-O-C(O)- wherein the group is attached to the parent structure through the carbonyl functionality. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, the alkyl moiety of an alkoxycarbonyl group is

optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, $-OR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-OC(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(O)OR^a$, $-OC(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00124] “Acyl” refers to the groups (alkyl)-C(O)-, (aryl)-C(O)-, (heteroaryl)-C(O)-, (heteroalkyl)-C(O)- and (heterocycloalkyl)-C(O)-, wherein the group is attached to the parent structure through the carbonyl functionality. If the R radical is heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, the hetero ring or chain atoms contribute to the total number of chain or ring atoms. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, the alkyl, aryl or heteroaryl moiety of the acyl group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which are independently alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, $-OR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-OC(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(O)OR^a$, $-OC(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00125] “Acyloxy” refers to a $R(C=O)O-$ radical wherein “R” is alkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroalkyl or heterocycloalkyl, which are as described herein. If the R radical is heteroaryl or heterocycloalkyl, the hetero ring or chain atoms contribute to the total number of chain or ring atoms. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, the “R” of an acyloxy group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, $-OR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-OC(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(O)OR^a$, $-OC(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

$S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00126] “Amino” or “amine” refers to a $-N(R^a)_2$ radical group, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl, unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification. When a $-N(R^a)_2$ group has two R^a substituents other than hydrogen, they can be combined with the nitrogen atom to form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring. For example, $-N(R^a)_2$ is intended to include, but is not limited to, 1-pyrrolidinyl and 4-morpholinyl. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an amino group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, $-OR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-OC(O)-R^a$, $-N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(O)OR^a$, $-OC(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00127] The term “substituted amino” also refers to N-oxides of the groups $-NHR^d$, and NR^dR^d each as described above. N-oxides can be prepared by treatment of the corresponding amino group with, for example, hydrogen peroxide or m-chloroperoxybenzoic acid.

[00128] “Amide” or “amido” refers to a chemical moiety with formula $-C(O)N(R)_2$ or $-NHC(O)R$, where R is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl (bonded through a ring carbon) and heteroalicyclic (bonded through a ring carbon), each of which moiety may itself be optionally substituted. The R_2 of $-N(R)_2$ of the amide may optionally be taken together with the nitrogen to which it is attached to form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an amido group is optionally substituted independently by one or more of the substituents as described herein for alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, or heterocycloalkyl. An amide may be an amino acid or a peptide molecule attached to a compound of Formula (I), thereby forming a prodrug. The

procedures and specific groups to make such amides, including the use of protecting groups, are known to those of skill in the art and can readily be found in seminal sources such as Greene and Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 3rd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, N.Y., 1999.

[00129] “Aromatic” or “aryl” or “Ar” refers to an aromatic radical with six to ten ring atoms (*e.g.*, C₆-C₁₀ aromatic or C₆-C₁₀ aryl) which has at least one ring having a conjugated pi electron system which is carbocyclic (*e.g.*, phenyl, fluorenyl, and naphthyl). Bivalent radicals formed from substituted benzene derivatives and having the free valences at ring atoms are named as substituted phenylene radicals. Bivalent radicals derived from univalent polycyclic hydrocarbon radicals whose names end in “-yl” by removal of one hydrogen atom from the carbon atom with the free valence are named by adding “-idene” to the name of the corresponding univalent radical, *e.g.*, a naphthyl group with two points of attachment is termed naphthylidene. Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “6 to 10” refers to each integer in the given range; *e.g.*, “6 to 10 ring atoms” means that the aryl group may consist of 6 ring atoms, 7 ring atoms, *etc.*, up to and including 10 ring atoms. The term includes monocyclic or fused-ring polycyclic (*i.e.*, rings which share adjacent pairs of ring atoms) groups. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an aryl moiety is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which are independently alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where t is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00130] “Aralkyl” or “arylalkyl” refers to an (aryl)alkyl-radical where aryl and alkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for aryl and alkyl respectively.

[00131] “Ester” refers to a chemical radical of formula -COOR, where R is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl (bonded through a ring carbon) and

heteroalicyclic (bonded through a ring carbon). The procedures and specific groups to make esters, including the use of protecting groups, are known to those of skill in the art and can readily be found in seminal sources such as Greene and Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, 3rd Ed., John Wiley & Sons, New York, N.Y., 1999. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, an ester group is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, trifluoromethyl, trifluoromethoxy, nitro, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where t is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tN(R^a)₂ (where t is 1 or 2), or PO₃(R^a)₂, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00132] “Fluoroalkyl” refers to an alkyl radical, as defined above, that is substituted by one or more fluoro radicals, as defined above, for example, trifluoromethyl, difluoromethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, 1-fluoromethyl-2-fluoroethyl, and the like. The alkyl part of the fluoroalkyl radical may be optionally substituted as defined above for an alkyl group.

[00133] “Halo,” “halide,” or, alternatively, “halogen” is intended to mean fluoro, chloro, bromo or iodo. The terms “haloalkyl,” “haloalkenyl,” “haloalkynyl,” and “haloalkoxy” include alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl and alkoxy structures that are substituted with one or more halo groups or with combinations thereof. For example, the terms “fluoroalkyl” and “fluoroalkoxy” include haloalkyl and haloalkoxy groups, respectively, in which the halo is fluorine.

[00134] “Heteroalkyl,” “heteroalkenyl,” and “heteroalkynyl” refer to optionally substituted alkyl, alkenyl and alkynyl radicals and which have one or more skeletal chain atoms selected from an atom other than carbon, e.g., oxygen, nitrogen, sulfur, phosphorus or combinations thereof. A numerical range may be given - e.g., C₁-C₄ heteroalkyl which refers to the chain length in total, which in this example is 4 atoms long. A heteroalkyl group may be substituted with one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, nitro, oxo, thioxo, trimethylsilyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -

$\text{OC(O)N(R}^a)_2$, $-\text{C(O)N(R}^a)_2$, $-\text{N(R}^a)\text{C(O)OR}^a$, $-\text{N(R}^a)\text{C(O)R}^a$, $-\text{N(R}^a)\text{C(O)N(R}^a)_2$, $\text{N(R}^a)\text{C(NR}^a)\text{N(R}^a)_2$, $-\text{N(R}^a)\text{S(O)}_t\text{R}^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-\text{S(O)}_t\text{OR}^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-\text{S(O)}_t\text{N(R}^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $\text{PO}_3(\text{R}^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00135] “Heteroalkylaryl” refers to an $-(\text{heteroalkyl})\text{aryl}$ radical where heteroalkyl and aryl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for heteroalkyl and aryl, respectively.

[00136] “Heteroalkylheteroaryl” refers to an $-(\text{heteroalkyl})\text{heteroaryl}$ radical where heteroalkyl and heteroaryl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for heteroalkyl and heteroaryl, respectively.

[00137] “Heteroalkylheterocycloalkyl” refers to an $-(\text{heteroalkyl})\text{heterocycloalkyl}$ radical where heteroalkyl and heterocycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for heteroalkyl and heterocycloalkyl, respectively.

[00138] “Heteroalkylcycloalkyl” refers to an $-(\text{heteroalkyl})\text{cycloalkyl}$ radical where heteroalkyl and cycloalkyl are as disclosed herein and which are optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described as suitable substituents for heteroalkyl and cycloalkyl, respectively.

[00139] “Heteroaryl” or “heteroaromatic” or “HetAr” refers to a 5- to 18-membered aromatic radical (*e.g.*, $\text{C}_5\text{-C}_{13}$ heteroaryl) that includes one or more ring heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur, and which may be a monocyclic, bicyclic, tricyclic or tetracyclic ring system. Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “5 to 18” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “5 to 18 ring atoms” means that the heteroaryl group may consist of 5 ring atoms, 6 ring atoms, etc., up to and including 18 ring atoms. Bivalent radicals derived from univalent heteroaryl radicals whose names end in “-yl” by removal of one hydrogen atom from the atom with the free valence are named by adding “-idene” to the name of the corresponding univalent radical - *e.g.*, a pyridyl group with two points of attachment is a pyridylidene. A N-containing “heteroaromatic” or “heteroaryl” moiety refers to an aromatic group in which at least one of the skeletal atoms of the ring is a nitrogen atom. The polycyclic

heteroaryl group may be fused or non-fused. The heteroatom(s) in the heteroaryl radical are optionally oxidized. One or more nitrogen atoms, if present, are optionally quaternized. The heteroaryl may be attached to the rest of the molecule through any atom of the ring(s). Examples of heteroaryls include, but are not limited to, azepinyl, acridinyl, benzimidazolyl, benzindolyl, 1,3-benzodioxolyl, benzofuranyl, benzoaxazolyl, benzo[*d*]thiazolyl, benzothiadiazolyl, benzo[*b*][1,4]dioxepinyl, benzo[*b*][1,4]oxazinyl, 1,4-benzodioxanyl, benzonaphthofuranyl, benzoxazolyl, benzodioxolyl, benzodioxinyl, benzoxazolyl, benzopyranyl, benzopyranonyl, benzofuranyl, benzofuranonyl, benzofurazanyl, benzothiazolyl, benzothieryl(benzothiophenyl), benzothieno[3,2-*d*]pyrimidinyl, benzotriazolyl, benzo[4,6]imidazo[1,2-*a*]pyridinyl, carbazolyl, cinnolinyl, cyclopenta[*d*]pyrimidinyl, 6,7-dihydro-5*H*-cyclopenta[4,5]thieno[2,3-*d*]pyrimidinyl, 5,6-dihydrobenzo[*h*]quinazolinyl, 5,6-dihydrobenzo[*h*]cinnolinyl, 6,7-dihydro-5*H*-benzo[6,7]cyclohepta[1,2-*c*]pyridazinyl, dibenzofuranyl, dibenzothiophenyl, furanyl, furazanyl, furanonyl, furo[3,2-*c*]pyridinyl, 5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrocycloocta[*d*]pyrimidinyl, 5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrocycloocta[*d*]pyridazinyl, 5,6,7,8,9,10-hexahydrocycloocta[*d*]pyridinyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, indazolyl, indolyl, indazolyl, isoindolyl, indolinyl, isoindolinyl, isoquinolyl, indoliziny, isoxazolyl, 5,8-methano-5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinazolinyl, naphthyridinyl, 1,6-naphthyridinonyl, oxadiazolyl, 2-oxoazepinyl, oxazolyl, oxiranyl, 5,6,6a,7,8,9,10,10a-octahydrobenzo[*h*]quinazolinyl, 1-phenyl-1*H*-pyrrolyl, phenazinyl, phenothiazinyl, phenoxazinyl, phthalazinyl, pteridinyl, purinyl, pyranyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazolo[3,4-*d*]pyrimidinyl, pyridinyl, pyrido[3,2-*d*]pyrimidinyl, pyrido[3,4-*d*]pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrrolyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydroquinazolinyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydrobenzo[4,5]thieno[2,3-*d*]pyrimidinyl, 6,7,8,9-tetrahydro-5*H*-cyclohepta[4,5]thieno[2,3-*d*]pyrimidinyl, 5,6,7,8-tetrahydropyrido[4,5-*c*]pyridazinyl, thiazolyl, thiadiazolyl, thiapyranyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, triazinyl, thieno[2,3-*d*]pyrimidinyl, thieno[3,2-*d*]pyrimidinyl, thieno[2,3-*c*]pyridinyl, and thiophenyl (*i.e.* thienyl). Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, a heteroaryl moiety is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which are independently: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, nitro, oxo, thioxo, trimethylsilanyl, -OR^a, -SR^a, -OC(O)-R^a, -N(R^a)₂, -C(O)R^a, -C(O)OR^a, -OC(O)N(R^a)₂, -C(O)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, -N(R^a)C(O)R^a, -N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)₂, N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)₂, -N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a (where *t* is 1 or 2), -S(O)_tOR^a (where *t* is

1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00140] Substituted heteroaryl also includes ring systems substituted with one or more oxide (-O-) substituents, such as, for example, pyridinyl *N*-oxides.

[00141] “Heteroarylalkyl” refers to a moiety having an aryl moiety, as described herein, connected to an alkylene moiety, as described herein, wherein the connection to the remainder of the molecule is through the alkylene group.

[00142] “Heterocycloalkyl” refers to a stable 3- to 18-membered non-aromatic ring radical that comprises two to twelve carbon atoms and from one to six heteroatoms selected from nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Whenever it appears herein, a numerical range such as “3 to 18” refers to each integer in the given range - *e.g.*, “3 to 18 ring atoms” means that the heterocycloalkyl group may consist of 3 ring atoms, 4 ring atoms, *etc.*, up to and including 18 ring atoms. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, the heterocycloalkyl radical is a monocyclic, bicyclic, tricyclic or tetracyclic ring system, which may include fused or bridged ring systems. The heteroatoms in the heterocycloalkyl radical may be optionally oxidized. One or more nitrogen atoms, if present, are optionally quaternized. The heterocycloalkyl radical is partially or fully saturated. The heterocycloalkyl may be attached to the rest of the molecule through any atom of the ring(s). Examples of such heterocycloalkyl radicals include, but are not limited to, dioxolanyl, thienyl[1,3]dithianyl, decahydroisoquinolyl, imidazoliny, imidazolidinyl, isothiazolidinyl, isoxazolidinyl, morpholinyl, octahydroindolyl, octahydroisoindolyl, 2-oxopiperazinyl, 2-oxopiperidinyl, 2-oxopyrrolidinyl, oxazolidinyl, piperidinyl, piperazinyl, 4-piperidonyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, quinuclidinyl, thiazolidinyl, tetrahydrofuryl, trithianyl, tetrahydropyranyl, thiomorpholinyl, thiamorpholinyl, 1-oxo-thiomorpholinyl, and 1,1-dioxo-thiomorpholinyl. Unless stated otherwise specifically in the specification, a heterocycloalkyl moiety is optionally substituted by one or more substituents which independently are: alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, hydroxy, halo, cyano, nitro, oxo, thioxo, trimethylsilanyl, $-OR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-OC(O)-R^a$, $-N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(O)OR^a$, $-OC(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(O)N(R^a)_2$, $N(R^a)C(NR^a)N(R^a)_2$, $-N(R^a)S(O)_tR^a$ (where t is 1 or 2), $-S(O)_tOR^a$ (where t is

1 or 2), $-S(O)_tN(R^a)_2$ (where t is 1 or 2), or $PO_3(R^a)_2$, where each R^a is independently hydrogen, alkyl, fluoroalkyl, carbocyclyl, carbocyclylalkyl, aryl, aralkyl, heterocycloalkyl, heterocycloalkylalkyl, heteroaryl or heteroarylalkyl.

[00143] “Heterocycloalkyl” also includes bicyclic ring systems wherein one non-aromatic ring, usually with 3 to 7 ring atoms, contains at least 2 carbon atoms in addition to 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from oxygen, sulfur, and nitrogen, as well as combinations comprising at least one of the foregoing heteroatoms; and the other ring, usually with 3 to 7 ring atoms, optionally contains 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from oxygen, sulfur, and nitrogen and is not aromatic.

[00144] “Isomers” are different compounds that have the same molecular formula.

“Stereoisomers” are isomers that differ only in the way the atoms are arranged in space - *i.e.*, having a different stereochemical configuration. “Enantiomers” are a pair of stereoisomers that are non-superimposable mirror images of each other. A 1:1 mixture of a pair of enantiomers is a “racemic” mixture. The term “(±)” is used to designate a racemic mixture where appropriate.

“Diastereoisomers” are stereoisomers that have at least two asymmetric atoms, but which are not mirror-images of each other. The absolute stereochemistry is specified according to the Cahn-Ingold-Prelog R-S system. When a compound is a pure enantiomer the stereochemistry at each chiral carbon can be specified by either *R* or *S*. Resolved compounds whose absolute configuration is unknown can be designated (+) or (-) depending on the direction (dextro- or levorotatory) which they rotate plane polarized light at the wavelength of the sodium D line. Certain of the compounds described herein contain one or more asymmetric centers and can thus give rise to enantiomers, diastereomers, and other stereoisomeric forms that can be defined, in terms of absolute stereochemistry, as (*R*)- or (*S*)-. The present chemical entities, pharmaceutical compositions and methods are meant to include all such possible isomers, including racemic mixtures, optically pure forms and intermediate mixtures. Optically active (*R*)- and (*S*)-isomers can be prepared using chiral synthons or chiral reagents, or resolved using conventional techniques. When the compounds described herein contain olefinic double bonds or other centers of geometric asymmetry, and unless specified otherwise, it is intended that the compounds include both *E* and *Z* geometric isomers.

[00145] “Enantiomeric purity” as used herein refers to the relative amounts, expressed as a percentage, of the presence of a specific enantiomer relative to the other enantiomer. For example, if a compound, which may potentially have an (*R*)- or an (*S*)-isomeric configuration, is present as a racemic mixture, the enantiomeric purity is about 50% with respect to either the (*R*)- or (*S*)-isomer. If that compound has one isomeric form predominant over the other, for example, 80% (*S*)- and 20% (*R*)-, the enantiomeric purity of the compound with respect to the (*S*)-isomeric form is 80%. The enantiomeric purity of a compound can be determined in a number of ways known in the art, including but not limited to chromatography using a chiral support, polarimetric measurement of the rotation of polarized light, nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy using chiral shift reagents which include but are not limited to lanthanide containing chiral complexes or the Pirkle alcohol, or derivatization of a compounds using a chiral compound such as Mosher's acid followed by chromatography or nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

[00146] “Moiety” refers to a specific segment or functional group of a molecule. Chemical moieties are often recognized chemical entities embedded in or appended to a molecule.

[00147] “Nitro” refers to the -NO₂ radical.

[00148] “Oxa” refers to the -O- radical.

[00149] “Oxo” refers to the =O radical.

[00150] “Tautomers” are structurally distinct isomers that interconvert by tautomerization. “Tautomerization” is a form of isomerization and includes prototropic or proton-shift tautomerization, which is considered a subset of acid-base chemistry. “Prototropic tautomerization” or “proton-shift tautomerization” involves the migration of a proton accompanied by changes in bond order, often the interchange of a single bond with an adjacent double bond. Where tautomerization is possible (e.g. in solution), a chemical equilibrium of tautomers can be reached. An example of tautomerization is keto-enol tautomerization. A specific example of keto-enol tautomerization is the interconversion of pentane-2,4-dione and 4-hydroxypent-3-en-2-one tautomers. Another example of tautomerization is phenol-keto tautomerization. A specific example of phenol-keto tautomerization is the interconversion of pyridin-4-ol and pyridin-4(1*H*)-one tautomers.

[00151] The terms “enantiomerically enriched,” “enantiomerically pure” and “non-racemic,” as used herein, refer to compositions in which the percent by weight of one enantiomer is greater than the amount of that one enantiomer in a control mixture of the racemic composition (e.g., greater than 1:1 by weight). For example, an enantiomerically enriched preparation of the (S)-enantiomer, means a preparation of the compound having greater than 50% by weight of the (S)-enantiomer relative to the (R)-enantiomer, such as at least 75% by weight, such as at least 80% by weight. In some embodiments, the enrichment can be significantly greater than 80% by weight, providing a “substantially enantiomerically enriched,” “substantially enantiomerically pure” or a “substantially non-racemic” preparation, which refers to preparations of compositions which have at least 85% by weight of one enantiomer relative to the other enantiomer, such as at least 90% by weight, and such as at least 95% by weight. The terms “diastereomerically enriched” and “diastereomerically pure,” as used herein, refer to compositions in which the percent by weight of one diastereomer is greater than the amount of that one diastereomer in a control mixture of diastereomers. In some embodiments, the enrichment can be significantly greater than 80% by weight, providing a “substantially diastereomerically enriched” or “substantially diastereomerically pure” preparation, which refers to preparations of compositions which have at least 85% by weight of one diastereomer relative to other diastereomers, such as at least 90% by weight, and such as at least 95% by weight.

[00152] In preferred embodiments, the enantiomerically enriched composition has a higher potency with respect to therapeutic utility per unit mass than does the racemic mixture of that composition. Enantiomers can be isolated from mixtures by methods known to those skilled in the art, including chiral high pressure liquid chromatography (HPLC) and the formation and crystallization of chiral salts; or preferred enantiomers can be prepared by asymmetric syntheses. See, for example, Jacques, *et al.*, *Enantiomers, Racemates and Resolutions*, Wiley Interscience, New York, 1981; and Eliel, *Stereochemistry of Carbon Compounds*, McGraw-Hill, NY, 1962.

[00153] A “leaving group or atom” is any group or atom that will, under selected reaction conditions, cleave from the starting material, thus promoting reaction at a specified site. Examples of such groups, unless otherwise specified, include halogen atoms and mesyloxy, p-nitrobenzenesulphonyloxy and tosyloxy groups.

[00154] “Protecting group” is intended to mean a group that selectively blocks one or more reactive sites in a multifunctional compound such that a chemical reaction can be carried out selectively on another unprotected reactive site and the group can then be readily removed after the selective reaction is complete. A variety of protecting groups are disclosed, for example, in T. H. Greene and P. G. M. Wuts, *Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Third Edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1999.

[00155] “Solvate” refers to a compound in physical association with one or more molecules of a pharmaceutically acceptable solvent.

[00156] “Substituted” means that the referenced group may have attached one or more additional moieties individually and independently selected from, for example, acyl, alkyl, alkylaryl, cycloalkyl, aralkyl, aryl, carbohydrate, carbonate, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl, hydroxy, alkoxy, aryloxy, mercapto, alkylthio, arylthio, cyano, halo, carbonyl, ester, thiocarbonyl, isocyanato, thiocyanato, isothiocyanato, nitro, oxo, perhaloalkyl, perfluoroalkyl, phosphate, silyl, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfonamidyl, sulfoxyl, sulfonate, urea, and amino, including mono- and di-substituted amino groups, and protected derivatives thereof. The substituents themselves may be substituted, for example, a cycloalkyl substituent may itself have a halide substituent at one or more of its ring carbons. The term “substituted” also means that one or more hydrogens on the designated atom/atoms is/are replaced with a selection from the indicated group, provided that the designated atom's normal valency under the existing circumstances is not exceeded, and that the substitution results in a stable compound. Combinations of substituents and/or variables are permissible if such combinations result in stable compounds. “Stable compound” or “stable structure” is defined as a compound or structure that is sufficiently robust to survive isolation to a useful degree of purity from a reaction mixture, and formulation into an efficacious therapeutic agent. The terms “optionally substituted” and “may optionally be substituted” means optional substitution with the specified groups, radicals or moieties.

[001] “Sulfanyl” refers to groups that include -S-(optionally substituted alkyl), -S-(optionally substituted aryl), -S-(optionally substituted heteroaryl) and -S-(optionally substituted heterocycloalkyl).

[002] “Sulfinyl” refers to groups that include -S(O)-H, -S(O)-(optionally substituted alkyl), -S(O)-(optionally substituted amino), -S(O)-(optionally substituted aryl), -S(O)-(optionally substituted heteroaryl) and -S(O)-(optionally substituted heterocycloalkyl).

[003] “Sulfonyl” refers to groups that include -S(O₂)-H, -S(O₂)-(optionally substituted alkyl), -S(O₂)-(optionally substituted amino), -S(O₂)-(optionally substituted aryl), -S(O₂)-(optionally substituted heteroaryl), and -S(O₂)-(optionally substituted heterocycloalkyl).

[004] “Sulfonamidyl” or “sulfonamido” refers to a -S(=O)₂-NRR radical, where each R is selected independently from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl (bonded through a ring carbon) and heteroalicyclic (bonded through a ring carbon). The R groups in -NRR of the -S(=O)₂-NRR radical may be taken together with the nitrogen to which it is attached to form a 4-, 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring. A sulfonamido group is optionally substituted by one or more of the substituents described for alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, respectively.

[005] “Sulfoxyl” refers to a -S(=O)₂OH radical.

[006] “Sulfonate” refers to a -S(=O)₂-OR radical, where R is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl (bonded through a ring carbon) and heteroalicyclic (bonded through a ring carbon). A sulfonate group is optionally substituted on R by one or more of the substituents described for alkyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, respectively.

[007] Compounds of the invention also include crystalline and amorphous forms of those compounds, including, for example, polymorphs, pseudopolymorphs, solvates, hydrates, unsolvated polymorphs (including anhydrides), conformational polymorphs, and amorphous forms of the compounds, as well as mixtures thereof. “Crystalline form” and “polymorph” are intended to include all crystalline and amorphous forms of the compound, including, for example, polymorphs, pseudopolymorphs, solvates, hydrates, unsolvated polymorphs (including anhydrides), conformational polymorphs, and amorphous forms, as well as mixtures thereof, unless a particular crystalline or amorphous form is referred to.

Co-administration of compounds

[008] An embodiment of the invention is a composition, such as a pharmaceutical composition, comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor. Another embodiment is a kit containing both components formulated into separate pharmaceutical compositions, which are formulated for co-administration.

[009] Another embodiment of the invention is a method of treating a disease or condition in a subject, in particular a hyperproliferative disorder like leukemia, lymphoma or a solid tumor cancer in a subject, comprising co-administering to the subject in need thereof a therapeutically effective amount of a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor. The pharmaceutical composition comprising the combination, and the kit, are both for use in treating such disease or condition.

[0010] In an exemplary embodiment, the solid tumor cancer is selected from the group consisting of breast, lung, colorectal, thyroid, bone sarcoma and stomach cancers.

[0011] In an exemplary embodiment, the leukemia is selected from the group consisting of acute myelogenous leukemia (AML), chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), and acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL).

[0012] In a preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- γ inhibitor.

[0013] In another preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor.

[0014] In another preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor.

[0015] In a particularly preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor. This PI3K- δ inhibitor is more preferably a compound of Formula VIII, even more preferably the compound of Formula IX.

[0016] The BTK inhibitor is preferably a compound of Formula XVII, even more preferably the compound of Formula XVIII.

[0017] In one specific embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor and the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula XVII, even more preferably the compound of Formula

XVIII. In a specifically preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is the compound of Formula IX and the BTK inhibitor is the compound of Formula XVIII. One or both of said inhibitors may also be in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

[0018] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K inhibitor selective for δ -PI3K, γ -PI3K, or γ,δ -PI3K isoforms .

[0019] The combination may be administered by any route known in the art. In an exemplary embodiment, the combination of the PI3K inhibitor, which is preferably selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, with the BTK inhibitor is administered by oral, intravenous, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous or transdermal means. In one embodiment, the administration is by injection.

[0020] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, which is preferably selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, is in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

[0021] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is in the form of a pharmaceutically acceptable salt.

[0022] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, which is preferably selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, is administered to the subject before administration of the BTK inhibitor.

[0023] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, which is preferably selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, is administered concurrently with the administration of the BTK inhibitor.

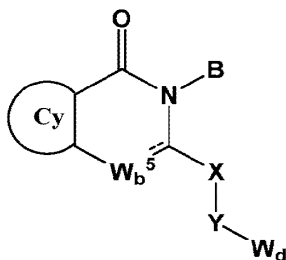
[0024] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, which is preferably selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, is administered to the subject after administration of the BTK inhibitor.

[0025] In an exemplary embodiment, the subject is a mammal, such as a human.

PI3K Inhibitors

[0026] In particular, it is one of the PI3K inhibitors described in more detail in the following paragraphs. Preferably, it is a PI3K inhibitor selected from the group consisting of PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, and PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor. In one specific embodiment, it is a PI3K- δ inhibitor. In a preferred embodiment, it is a compound of Formula IX or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

[0027] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, which may preferably be selected from the group consisting of PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, and PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, is a compound selected from the structures disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 8,193,182 and 8,569,323, and U.S. Patent Application Publication Nos. 2012/0184568 A1, 2013/0344061 A1, and 2013/0267521 A1. In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (I):



Formula (I)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

Cy is aryl or heteroaryl substituted by 0 or 1 occurrences of R³ and 0, 1, 2, or 3 occurrences of R⁵;

W_b⁵ is CR⁸, CHR⁸, or N;

R⁸ is hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heteroalkyl, alkoxy, amido, amino, acyl, acyloxy, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, hydroxyl or nitro;

B is hydrogen, alkyl, amino, heteroalkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, or heteroaryl, each of which is substituted with 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4 occurrences of R²;

each R^2 is independently alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, alkoxy, amido, amino, acyl, acyloxy, alkoxycarbonyl, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, hydroxyl, nitro, phosphate, urea, or carbonate;

X is $-(CH(R^9))_z-$;

Y is $-N(R^9)-C(=O)-$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)-$, $-C(=O)-N(R^9)-(CHR^9)-$, $-N(R^9)-S(=O)-$, $-S(=O)-N(R^9)-$, $S(=O)_2-N(R^9)-$, $-N(R^9)-C(=O)-N(R^9)$ or $-N(R^9)S(=O)_2-$;

z is an integer of 1, 2, 3, or 4;

R^3 is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, fluoroalkyl, heteroalkyl, alkoxy, amido, amino, acyl, acyloxy, sulfinyl, sulfonyl, sulfoxide, sulfone, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, aryl, heteroaryl, hydroxyl, or nitro;

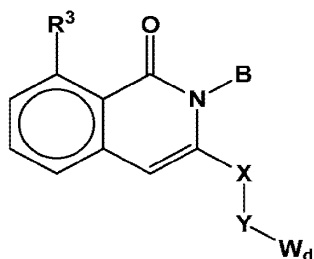
each R^5 is independently alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heteroalkyl, alkoxy, amido, amino, acyl, acyloxy, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, hydroxyl, or nitro;

each R^9 is independently hydrogen, alkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, or heteroalkyl; or two adjacent occurrences of R^9 together with the atoms to which they are attached form a 4- to 7-membered ring;

W_d is heterocyclyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, or heteroaryl, each of which is substituted with one or more R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} or R^{13} , and

R^{10} , R^{11} , R^{12} and R^{13} are each independently hydrogen, alkyl, heteroalkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, alkoxy, heterocycloxy, amido, amino, acyl, acyloxy, alkoxycarbonyl, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, hydroxyl, nitro, phosphate, urea, carbonate or $NR'R''$ wherein R' and R'' are taken together with nitrogen to form a cyclic moiety.

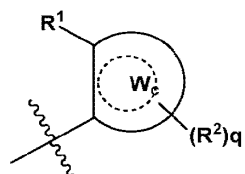
[0028] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor, PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, or PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor is a compound of Formula (I-1):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

B is a moiety of Formula (II):



Formula (II) ;

W_c is aryl, heteroaryl, heterocycloalkyl, or cycloalkyl;

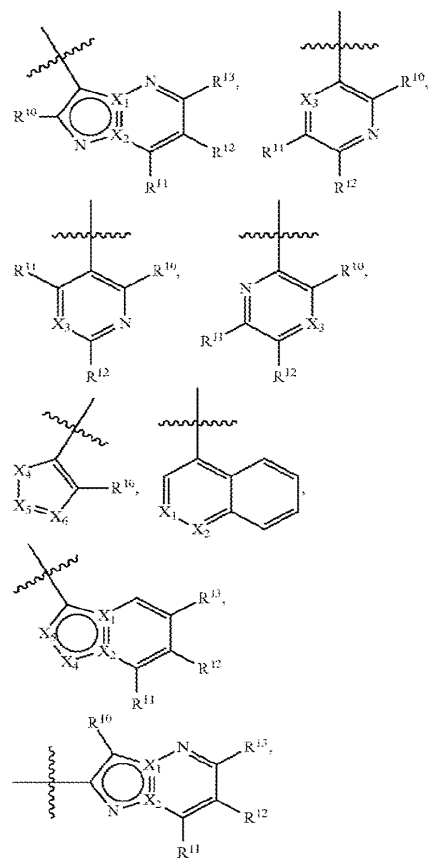
q is an integer of 0, 1, 2, 3, or 4;

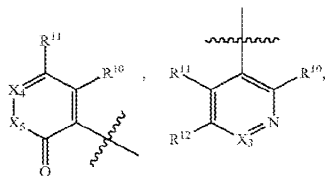
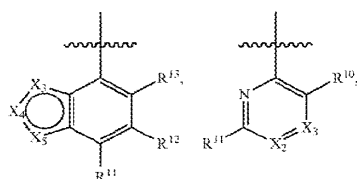
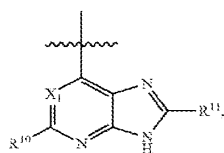
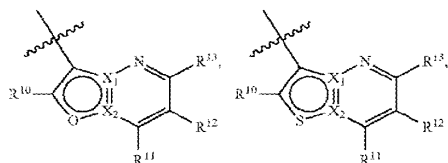
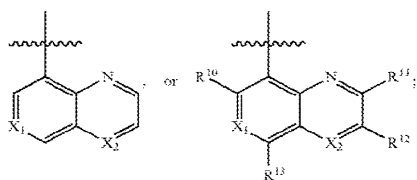
X is a bond or -(CH(R⁹))_z-, and z is an integer of 1, 2, 3 or 4;

Y is a bond, -N(R⁹)-, -O-, -S-, -S(=O)-, -S(=O)₂-, -C(=O)-, -C(=O)(CHR⁹)_z-, -N(R⁹)-C(=O)-, -N(R⁹)-C(=O)NH- or -N(R⁹)C(R⁹)₂-;

z is an integer of 1, 2, 3, or 4;

W_d is:

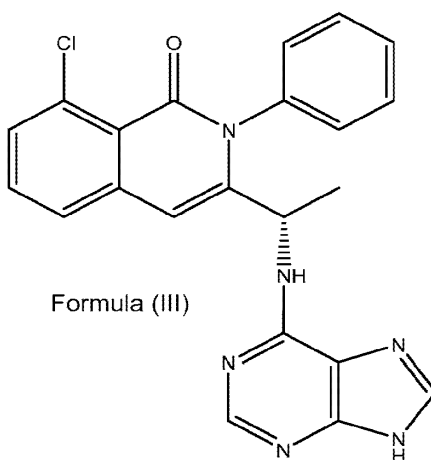




R¹ is hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, alkoxy, amido, alkoxycarbonyl, sulfonamido, halo, cyano, or nitro;

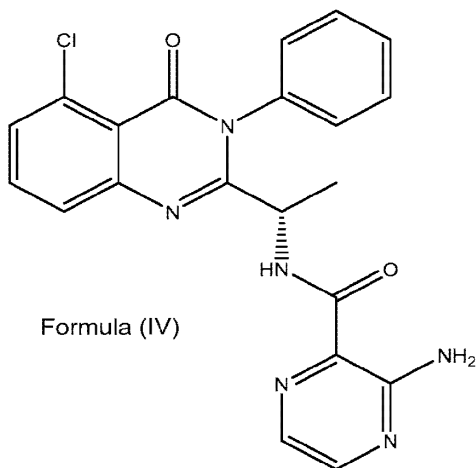
R² is alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heteroarylalkyl, alkoxy, amino, halo, cyano, hydroxy or nitro; R^{sup.3} is hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, alkoxy, amido, amino, alkoxycarbonyl sulfonamido, halo, cyano, hydroxy or nitro; and each instance of R⁹ is independently hydrogen, alkyl, or heterocycloalkyl.

[0029] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (III), also known as (*S*)-3-(1-((9*H*-purin-6-yl)amino)ethyl)-8-chloro-2-phenylisoquinolin-1(2*H*)-one,



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

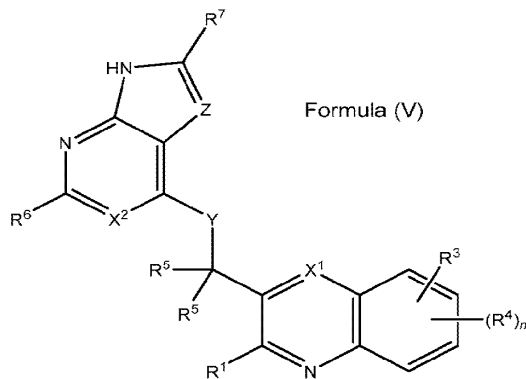
[0030] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (IV), also known as (*S*)-3-amino-*N*-(1-(5-chloro-4-oxo-3-phenyl-3,4-dihydroquinazolin-2-yl)ethyl)pyrazine-2-carboxamide,



Formula (IV)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

[0031] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound selected from the structures disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 8,193,199 and 8,586,739. In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (V):



Formula (V)

or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X¹ is C(R⁹) or N;

X² is C(R₁₀) or N;

Y is N(R¹¹), O or S;

Z is CR⁸ or N;

n is 0, 1, 2 or 3;

R¹ is a direct-bonded or oxygen -linked saturated, partially saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl;

R² is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, OS(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a and —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a; or R² is selected from C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl and —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl all of which are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₄alkyl;

R³ is selected from H, halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R², —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆haloalkyl, OC₁₋₆alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₆alkyl;

R⁴ is, independently, in each instance, halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl or C₁₋₄haloalkyl;

R⁵ is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, or C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl,

OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl; or both R⁵ groups together form a C₃₋₆spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl;

R⁶ is selected from H, halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a;

R⁷ is selected from H, halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a;

R⁸ is selected from H, C₁₋₆haloalkyl, Br, Cl, F, I, OR^a, NR^aR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆haloalkyl, OC₁₋₆alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₆alkyl;

R⁹ is selected from H, halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^aC(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(O)NR^aR^aN(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a; or R⁹ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1,

2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a and —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a;

R¹⁰ is H, C₁₋₃alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, CO₂R^a, C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)R^b, S(=O)₂R^b or S(=O)₂NR^aR^a;

R¹¹ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H or R^b; and

R^b is independently, at each instance, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl, the phenyl, benzyl and C₁₋₆alkyl being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, —OC₁₋₄alkyl, —NH₂, —NHC₁₋₄alkyl, —N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[0032] In a preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹). In a further preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is N. In a further embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is C(R¹⁰).

[0033] In a preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the phenyl is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl. In one specific embodiment, R¹ is unsubstituted phenyl. In a further specific embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[0034] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is selected from 2-methylphenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 2-trifluoromethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl and 2-methoxyphenyl.

[0035] In a further preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenoxy.

[0036] In a further preferred embodiment, R¹ is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4

atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[0037] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[0038] In a further specific embodiment, R¹ is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[0039] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is an unsubstituted unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S.

[0040] In a further specific embodiment, R¹ is selected from pyridyl and pyrimidinyl.

[0041] In one embodiment, R³ is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆haloalkyl, OC₁₋₆alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₆alkyl.

[0042] In one preferred embodiment, R³ is H.

[0043] In another preferred embodiment, R^3 is selected from F, Cl, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-6} haloalkyl, OC_{1-6} alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C_{1-6} alkyl.

[0044] In one embodiment, R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, or C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, NH_2 , NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$; or both R^5 groups together form a C_{3-6} spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, NH_2 , NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$.

[0045] In one preferred embodiment, R^5 is H.

[0046] In another preferred embodiment, one R^5 is S-methyl, the other is H.

[0047] In another preferred embodiment, at least one R^5 is halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, or C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, NH_2 , NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$.

[0048] In a preferred embodiment, R^6 is H.

[0049] In another preferred embodiment, R^6 is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[0050] In a preferred embodiment, R^7 is H.

[0051] In another preferred embodiment, R^7 is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[0052] In a preferred embodiment, R^8 is selected from H, CF_3 , C_{1-3} alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[0053] In one specific embodiment, R^8 is H.

[0054] In another specific embodiment, R^8 is selected from CF_3 , C_{1-3} alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[0055] In a preferred embodiment, R^9 is H.

[0056] In another embodiment, R^9 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, — $C(=O)R^a$, — $C(=O)OR^a$, — $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, — $C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, — OR^a , — $OC(=O)R^a$, —

OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a.

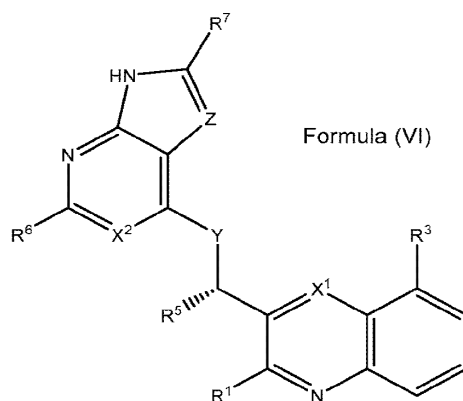
[0057] In one embodiment, R⁹ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a and —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a.

[0058] In one preferred embodiment, R¹⁰ is H.

[0059] In another preferred embodiment, R¹⁰ is cyano, nitro, CO₂R^a, C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, S(=O)R^b, S(=O)₂R^b or S(=O)₂NR^aR^a.

[0060] In one preferred embodiment, R¹¹ is H.

[0061] In another exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (VI):



or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X^1 is $C(R^9)$ or N;

X^2 is $C(R^{10})$ or N;

Y is $N(R^{11})$, O or S;

Z is CR^8 or N;

R^1 is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}$ alkyl) C_{1-4} alkyl and C_{1-4} haloalkyl;

R^2 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$; or R^2 is selected from C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-NR^a(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-NR^a(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)phenyl$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)phenyl$

and $\text{—NR}^a(\text{C}_{1-3}\text{alkyl})\text{phenyl}$ all of which are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, Br, Cl, F, I and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$;

R^3 is selected from H, halo, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a , —C(=O)OR^a , $\text{C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, —OR^a , —OC(=O)R^a , $\text{—OC(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC(=O)N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$, —SR^a , —S(=O)R^a , $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, NR^aR^a , $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{haloalkyl}$, $\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, Br, Cl, F, I and $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, or $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{haloalkyl}$, $\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, NH_2 , $\text{NHC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{N(C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl)C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$; or both R^5 groups together form a C_{3-6} -spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{haloalkyl}$, $\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, NH_2 , $\text{NHC}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{N(C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl)C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$;

R^6 is selected from H, halo, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a , —C(=O)OR^a , $\text{—C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, —S(=O)R^a , $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$;

R^7 is selected from H, halo, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a , —C(=O)OR^a , $\text{—C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)R}^a\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$;

R^8 is selected from H, $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{haloalkyl}$, Br, Cl, F, I, OR^a , NR^aR^a , $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{haloalkyl}$, $\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, Br, Cl, F, I and $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

R^9 is selected from H, halo, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a , —C(=O)OR^a , $\text{—C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, —OR^a , —OC(=O)R^a , $\text{OC(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC(=O)N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$, —SR^a , —S(=O)R^a , $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, —

$N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$; or R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$;

R^{10} is H, $C_{1-3}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, CO_2R^a , $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^b$, $S(=O)_2R^b$ or $S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$; $-R^{11}$ is H or $C_{1-4}alkyl$;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H or R^b ; and

R^b is independently, at each instance, phenyl, benzyl or $C_{1-6}alkyl$, the phenyl, benzyl and $C_{1-6}alkyl$ being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $-OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $-NH_2$, $-NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $-N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$.

[0062] In a preferred embodiment, X^1 is $C(R^9)$. In a further preferred embodiment, X^1 is $C(R^9)$ and X^2 is N. In a further embodiment, X^1 is $C(R^9)$ and X^2 is $C(R^{10})$.

[0063] In a preferred embodiment, R^1 is phenyl substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the phenyl is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$. In one specific embodiment, R^1 is unsubstituted phenyl. In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is phenyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

[0064] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is selected from 2-methylphenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 2-trifluoromethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl and 2-methoxyphenyl.

[0065] In a further preferred embodiment, R^1 is phenoxy.

[0066] In a further preferred embodiment, R^1 is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, $OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

[0067] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, $OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

[0068] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, $OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

[0069] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsubstituted unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S.

[0070] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is selected from pyridyl and pyrimidinyl.

[0071] In one embodiment, R^3 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$.

[0072] In one preferred embodiment, R^3 is H.

[0073] In another preferred embodiment, R^3 is selected from F, Cl, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$.

[0074] In one embodiment, R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, or $C_{1-6}alkyl$ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$; or both R^5 groups together form a $C_{3-6}spiroalkyl$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$.

[0075] In one preferred embodiment, R^5 is H.

[0076] In another preferred embodiment, one R^5 is S-methyl, the other is H.

[0077] In another preferred embodiment, at least one R⁵ is halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, or C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[0078] In a preferred embodiment, R⁶ is H.

[0079] In another preferred embodiment, R⁶ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[0080] In a preferred embodiment, R⁷ is H.

[0081] In another preferred embodiment, R⁷ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[0082] In a preferred embodiment, R⁸ is selected from H, CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[0083] In one specific embodiment, R⁸ is H.

[0084] In another specific embodiment, R⁸ is selected from CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[0085] In a preferred embodiment, R⁹ is H.

[0086] In another embodiment, R⁹ is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a.

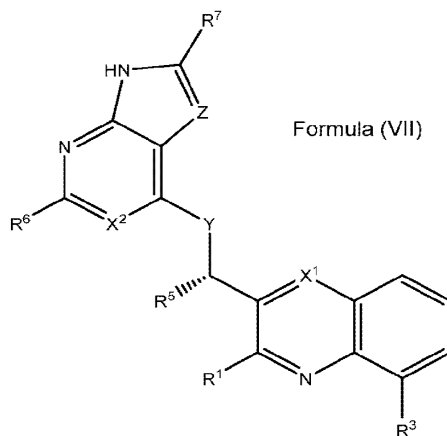
[0087] In one embodiment, R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$.

[0088] In one preferred embodiment, R^{10} is H.

[0089] In another preferred embodiment, R^{10} is cyano, nitro, CO_2R^a , $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $S(=O)R^b$, $S(=O)_2R^b$ or $S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$.

[0090] In one preferred embodiment, R^{11} is H.

[0091] In another exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (VII):



or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X¹ is C(R⁹) or N;

X² is C(R¹⁰) or N;

Y is N(R¹¹), O or S;

Z is CR⁸ or N; R¹ is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl;

R² is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a and —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a; or R² is selected from C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)heteroaryl, —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)heterocycle, —(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl, —O(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl and —NR^a(C₁₋₃alkyl)phenyl all of which are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₄alkyl;

R³ is selected from H, halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR¹, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆haloalkyl, OC₁₋₆alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, or C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, NH_2 , NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$; or both R^5 groups together form a C_{3-6} -spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, NH_2 , NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$;

R^6 is selected from H, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^aS(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$;

R^7 is selected from H, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^aS(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$;

R^8 is selected from H, C_{1-6} haloalkyl, Br, Cl, F, I, OR^a , NR^aR^a , C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-6} haloalkyl, OC_{1-6} alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^9 is selected from H, halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$; or R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected

from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a and —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a;

R¹⁰ is H, C₁₋₃alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, CO₂R^a, C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —S(=O)R^b, S(=O)₂R^b or S(=O)₂NR^aR^a;

R¹¹ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H or R^b; and

R^b is independently, at each instance, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl, the phenyl, benzyl and C₁₋₆alkyl being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, —OC₁₋₄alkyl, —NH₂, —NHC₁₋₄alkyl, —N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[0092] In a preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹). In a further preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is N. In a further embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is C(R¹⁰).

[0093] In a preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the phenyl is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl. In one specific embodiment, R¹ is unsubstituted phenyl. In a further specific embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[0094] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is selected from 2-methylphenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 2-trifluoromethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl and 2-methoxyphenyl.

[0095] In a further preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenoxy.

[0096] In a further preferred embodiment, R^1 is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}$ alkyl) C_{1-4} alkyl and C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

[0097] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R^2 substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}$ alkyl) C_{1-4} alkyl and C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

[0098] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}$ alkyl) C_{1-4} alkyl and C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

[0099] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsubstituted unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S.

[00100] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is selected from pyridyl and pyrimidinyl.

[00101] In one embodiment, R^3 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^a$, C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C_{1-6} alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-6} haloalkyl, OC_{1-6} alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C_{1-6} alkyl.

[00102] In one preferred embodiment, R³ is H.

[00103] In another preferred embodiment, R³ is selected from F, Cl, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆haloalkyl, OC₁₋₆alkyl, Br, Cl, F, I and C₁₋₆alkyl.

[00104] In one embodiment, R⁵ is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, or C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl; or both R⁵ groups together form a C₃₋₆spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[00105] In one preferred embodiment, R⁵ is H.

[00106] In another preferred embodiment, one R⁵ is S-methyl, the other is H.

[00107] In another preferred embodiment, at least one R⁵ is halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, or C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[00108] In a preferred embodiment, R⁶ is H.

[00109] In another preferred embodiment, R⁶ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[00110] In a preferred embodiment, R⁷ is H.

[00111] In another preferred embodiment, R⁷ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[00112] In a preferred embodiment, R⁸ is selected from H, CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[00113] In one specific embodiment, R⁸ is H.

[00114] In another specific embodiment, R⁸ is selected from CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[00115] In a preferred embodiment, R⁹ is H.

[00116] In another embodiment, R^9 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $—C(=O)R^a$, $—C(=O)OR^a$, $—C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—OR^a$, $—OC(=O)R^a$, $—OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $—OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $—SR^a$, $—S(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2R^a$, $—S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $—C(=O)R^a$, $—C(=O)OR^a$, $—C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—OR^a$, $—OC(=O)R^a$, $—OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $—SR^a$, $—S(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2R^a$, $—S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$.

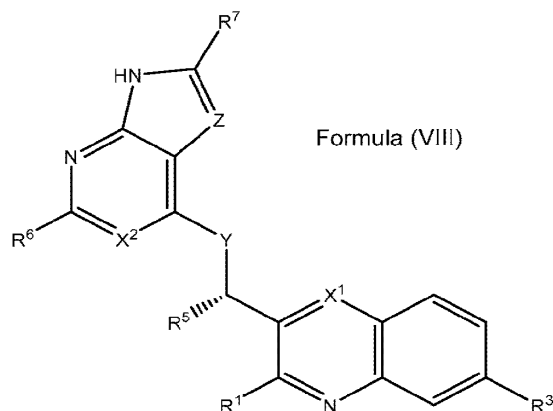
[00117] In one embodiment, R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $—C(=O)R^a$, $—C(=O)OR^a$, $—C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—OR^a$, $—OC(=O)R^a$, $—OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $—OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $—SR^a$, $—S(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2R^a$, $—S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $—N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $—NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$.

[00118] In one preferred embodiment, R^{10} is H.

[00119] In another preferred embodiment, R^{10} is cyano, nitro, CO_2R^a , $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $—C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $—S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $S(=O)R^b$, $S(=O)_2R^b$ or $S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$.

In one preferred embodiment, R¹¹ is H.

[00120] In another exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (VIII):



or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X¹ is C(R⁹) or N;

X² is C(R¹⁰) or N;

Y is N(R¹¹), O or S;

Z is CR⁸ or N;

R¹ is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl;

R² is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —

$N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$; or R^2 is selected from $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl, heterocycle, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-NR^a(C_{1-3}alkyl)heteroaryl$, $-NR^a(C_{1-3}alkyl)heterocycle$, $-(C_{1-3}alkyl)phenyl$, $-O(C_{1-3}alkyl)phenyl$ and $-NR^a(C_{1-3}alkyl)phenyl$ all of which are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-4}alkyl$;

R^3 is selected from H, halo, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$;

R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, or $C_{1-6}alkyl$ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$; or both R^5 groups together form a C_{3-6} -spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$;

R^6 is selected from H, halo, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$;

R^7 is selected from H, halo, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$;

R^8 is selected from H, $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I, OR^a , NR^aR^a , $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$;

R^9 is selected from H, halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$; or R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$ and $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$;

R^{10} is H, $C_{1-3}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, cyano, nitro, CO_2R^a , $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)R^b$, $-S(=O)_2R^b$ or $S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$;

R^{11} is H or $C_{1-4}alkyl$;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H or R^b ; and

R^b is independently, at each instance, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl, the phenyl, benzyl and C₁₋₆alkyl being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, —OC₁₋₄alkyl, —NH₂, —NHC₁₋₄alkyl, —N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[00121] In a preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹). In a further preferred embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is N. In a further embodiment, X¹ is C(R⁹) and X² is C(R¹⁰).

[00122] In a preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the phenyl is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl. In one specific embodiment, R¹ is unsubstituted phenyl. In a further specific embodiment, R¹ is phenyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[00123] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is selected from 2-methylphenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 2-trifluoromethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl and 2-methoxyphenyl.

[00124] In a further preferred embodiment, R¹ is phenoxy.

[00125] In a further preferred embodiment, R¹ is a direct-bonded or oxygen-linked saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[00126] In one specific embodiment, R¹ is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 0 or 1 R² substituents, and the ring is additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl and C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

[00127] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the ring is substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, cyano, C_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} alkyl, OC_{1-4} haloalkyl, NHC_{1-4} alkyl, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$ and $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

[00128] In one specific embodiment, R^1 is an unsubstituted unsaturated 5- or 6-membered monocyclic ring containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S.

[00129] In a further specific embodiment, R^1 is selected from pyridyl and pyrimidinyl.

[00130] In one embodiment, R^3 is selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, $-C(O)R^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C(NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-OR^a$, $-OC(=O)R^a$, $-OC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^a$, $-SR^a$, $-S(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2R^a$, $-S(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(O)OR^a$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)R^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2R^a$, $-N(R^a)S(=O)_2NR^aR^a$, $-NR^aC_{2-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^a$, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$.

[00131] In one preferred embodiment, R^3 is H.

[00132] In another preferred embodiment, R^3 is selected from F, Cl, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the $C_{1-6}alkyl$, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from $C_{1-6}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-6}alkyl$, Br, Cl, F, I and $C_{1-6}alkyl$.

[00133] In one embodiment, R^5 is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, or $C_{1-6}alkyl$ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$; or both R^5 groups together form a C_{3-6} spiroalkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$, $OC_{1-4}alkyl$, NH_2 , $NHC_{1-4}alkyl$, $N(C_{1-4}alkyl)C_{1-4}alkyl$.

[00134] In one preferred embodiment, R⁵ is H.

[00135] In another preferred embodiment, one R⁵ is S-methyl, the other is H.

[00136] In another preferred embodiment, at least one R⁵ is halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, or C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, cyano, OH, OC₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, OC₁₋₄alkyl, NH₂, NHC₁₋₄alkyl, N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl.

[00137] In a preferred embodiment, R⁶ is H.

[00138] In another preferred embodiment, R⁶ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[00139] In a preferred embodiment, R⁷ is H.

[00140] In another preferred embodiment, R⁷ is F, Cl, cyano or nitro.

[00141] In a preferred embodiment, R⁸ is selected from H, CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[00142] In one specific embodiment, R⁸ is H.

[00143] In another specific embodiment, R⁸ is selected from CF₃, C₁₋₃alkyl, Br, Cl and F.

[00144] In a preferred embodiment, R⁹ is H.

[00145] In another embodiment, R⁹ is selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —N(R^a)S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, —NR^aC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle, wherein the C₁₋₆alkyl, phenyl, benzyl, heteroaryl and heterocycle are additionally substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a, —C(=O)OR^a, —C(=O)NR^aR^a, —C(=NR^a)NR^aR^a, —OR^a, —OC(=O)R^a, —OC(=O)NR^aR^a, —OC(=O)N(R^a)S(=O)₂R^a, —OC₂₋₆alkylOR^a, —SR^a, —S(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂R^a, —S(=O)₂NR^aR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)R^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)OR^a, —S(=O)₂N(R^a)C(=O)NR^aR^a, —NR^aR^a,

$\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$.

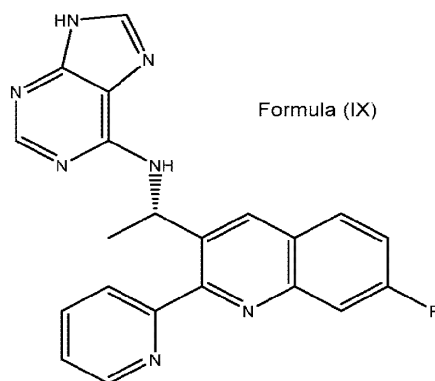
[00146] In one embodiment, R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, but containing no more than one O or S, wherein the available carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo or thioxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 substituents selected from halo, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, cyano, nitro, —C(=O)R^a , —C(=O)OR^a , $\text{—C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, —OR^a , —OC(=O)R^a , $\text{—OC(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC(=O)N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$, —SR^a , —S(=O)R^a , $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^a$, $\text{—N(R}^a\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—NR}^a\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^a\text{R}^a$ and $\text{—NR}^a\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^a$.

[00147] In one preferred embodiment, R^{10} is H.

[00148] In another preferred embodiment, R^{10} is cyano, nitro, CO_2R^a , $\text{C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—C(=NR}^a\text{)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)R}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)OR}^a$, $\text{—S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^a\text{)C(=O)NR}^a\text{R}^a$, S(=O)R^b , $\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^b$ or $\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^a\text{R}^a$.

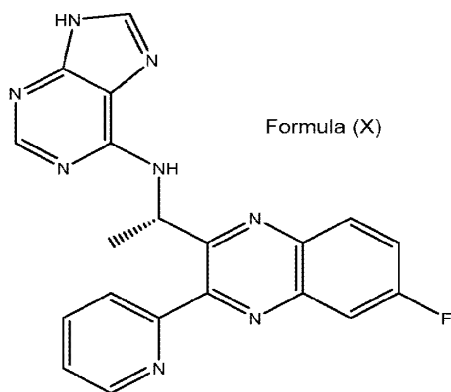
[00149] In one preferred embodiment, R^{11} is H.

[00150] In an exemplary preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (IX):



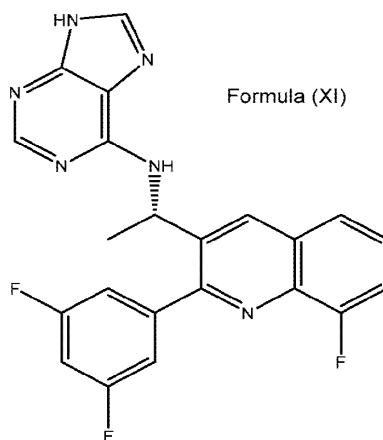
which is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(7-fluoro-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K- δ inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(7-fluoro-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

[00151] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor which is a compound of Formula (X):



which is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(6-fluoro-3-(pyridin-2-yl)quinoxalin-2-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

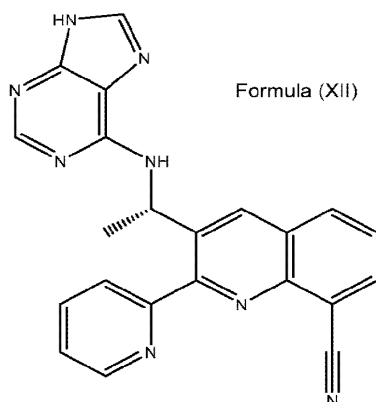
[00152] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor, which is a compound of Formula (XI):



which is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(2-(3,5-difluorophenyl)-8-fluoroquinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

[00153] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(2-(3,5-difluorophenyl)-8-fluoroquinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

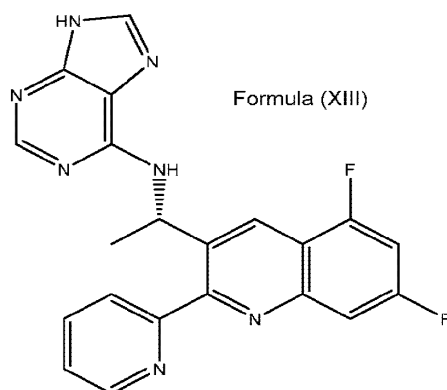
[00154] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor which is a compound of Formula (XII):



which is (*S*)-3-(1-((9*H*-purin-6-yl)amino)ethyl)-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinoline-8-carbonitrile, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof

[00155] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is (*S*)-3-(1-((9*H*-purin-6-yl)amino)ethyl)-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinoline-8-carbonitrile or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

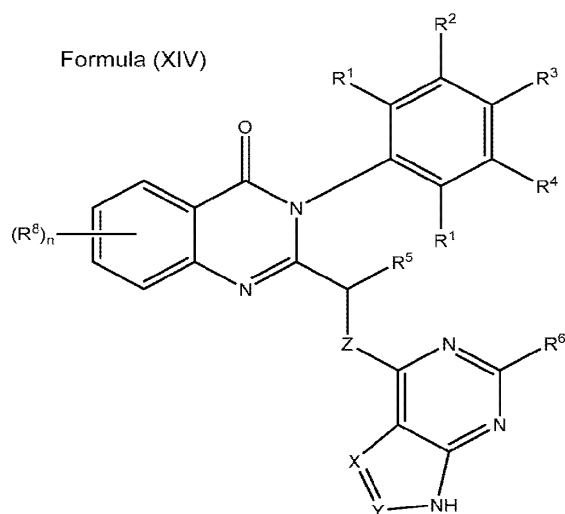
[00156] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K- δ inhibitor which is a compound of Formula (XIII):



which is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(5,7-difluoro-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof

[00157] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is (*S*)-*N*-(1-(5,7-difluoro-2-(pyridin-2-yl)quinolin-3-yl)ethyl)-9*H*-purin-6-amine or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

[00158] In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound selected from the structures disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 7,932,260 and 8,207,153. In an exemplary embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XIV):



wherein

X and Y, independently, are N or CH;

Z is N—R⁷ or O;

R¹ are the same and are hydrogen, halo, or C₁₋₃alkyl;

R² and R³, independently, are hydrogen, halo, or C₁₋₃alkyl;

R⁴ is hydrogen, halo, OR^a, CN, C₂₋₆alkynyl, C(=O)R^a, C(=O)NR^aR^b, C₃₋₆heterocycloalkyl, C₁₋₃alkyleneC₃₋₆heterocycloalkyl, OC₁₋₃alkyleneOR^a, OC₁₋₃alkyleneNR^aR^b, OC₁₋₃alkyleneC₃₋₆cycloalkyl, OC₃₋₆heterocycloalkyl, OC₁₋₃alkyleneC≡CH, or OC₁₋₃alkyleneC(=O)NR^aR^b;

R⁵ is C₁₋₃alkyl, CH₂CF₃, phenyl, CH₂C≡CH, C₁₋₃alkyleneOR^c, C₁₋₄alkyleneNR^aR^b, or C₁₋₄alkyleneNHC(=O)OR^a,

R⁶ is hydrogen, halo, or NR^aR^b;

R⁷ is hydrogen or R⁵ and R⁷ are taken together with the atoms to which they are attached to form a five- or six-membered saturated ring;

R⁸ is C₁₋₃alkyl, halo, CF₃, or CH₂C₃₋₆heterocycloalkyl;

n is 0, 1, or 2;

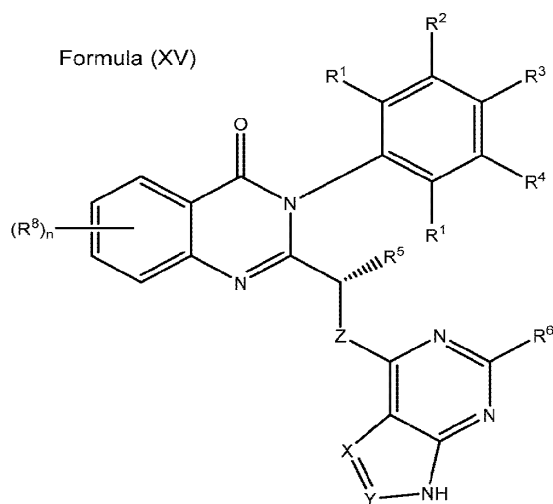
R^a is hydrogen, C₁₋₄alkyl, or CH₂C₆H₅;

R^b is hydrogen or C₁₋₃alkyl; and

R^c is hydrogen, C₁₋₃alkyl, or halo,

wherein when the R¹ groups are different from hydrogen, R² and R⁴ are the same; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, or prodrug, or solvate (e.g., hydrate) thereof.

[00159] In a preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is an enantiomer of Formula (XIV), as shown in Formula (XV):

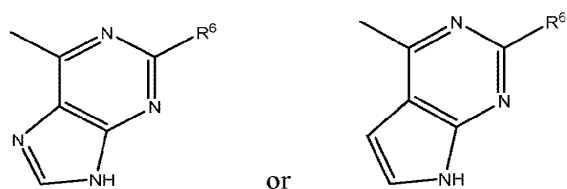


wherein X, Y, Z, R¹ through R⁸, R^a, R^b, R^c, and n are as defined above for Formula (XIV).

[00160] In various embodiments exhibiting increased potency relative to other compounds, R⁸ is C₁₋₃alkyl, F, Cl, or CF₃. Alternatively, in such embodiments, n is 0 (such that there is no R⁸ substituent).

[00161] In further embodiments exhibiting increased potency, X is N and Y is CH. Alternatively, X and Y may also both be CH.

[00162] In preferred embodiments, Z is N—R⁷, and the bicyclic ring system containing X and Y is:



[00163] In further embodiments exhibiting increased potency, R⁶ is hydrogen, halo, or NH₂. Preferably, R⁶ is hydrogen.

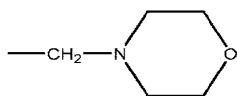
[00164] In preferred embodiments exhibiting such increased potency, n is 0 or 1; R⁸ (if n is 1) is C₁₋₃alkyl, F, Cl, or CF₃; R⁶ is hydrogen; X is N and Y is CH or X and Y are both CH; Z is NH;

R^1 are the same and are hydrogen, halo, or C_{1-3} alkyl; and R^2 and R^3 , independently, are hydrogen, halo, or C_{1-3} alkyl. Preferably, R^1 , R^2 , and R^3 are hydrogen.

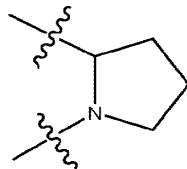
[00165] Unexpectedly, potency against PI3K- δ is conserved when R^1 is the same. In structural formulae (XIV) and (XV), R^2 and R^4 may differ provided that R^1 is H. When R^1 is H, free rotation is unexpectedly permitted about the bond connecting the phenyl ring substituent to the quinazoline ring, and the compounds advantageously do not exhibit atropisomerism (i.e., multiple diastereomer formation is avoided). Alternatively, R^2 and R^4 can be the same such that the compounds advantageously do not exhibit atropisomerism.

[00166] As used with respect to Formula (XIV) and Formula (XV), the term “alkyl” is defined as straight chained and branched hydrocarbon groups containing the indicated number of carbon atoms, e.g., methyl, ethyl, and straight chain and branched propyl and butyl groups. The terms “ C_{1-3} alkylene” and “ C_{1-4} alkylene” are defined as hydrocarbon groups containing the indicated number of carbon atoms and one less hydrogen than the corresponding alkyl group. The term “ C_{2-6} alkynyl” is defined as a hydrocarbon group containing the indicated number of carbon atoms and a carbon-carbon triple bond. The term “ C_{3-6} cycloalkyl” is defined as a cyclic hydrocarbon group containing the indicated number of carbon atoms. The term “ C_{2-6} heterocycloalkyl” is defined similarly as cycloalkyl except the ring contains one or two heteroatoms selected from the group consisting of O, NR^a , and S. The term “halo” is defined as fluoro, bromo, chloro, and iodo.

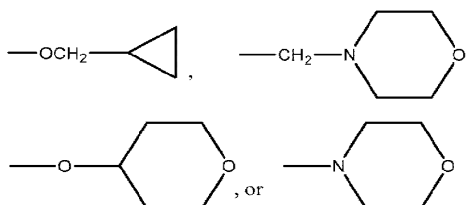
[00167] In other preferred embodiments, R^1 is hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, methyl, or



and R^2 is hydrogen, methyl, chloro, or fluoro; R^3 is hydrogen or fluoro; R^6 is NH_2 , hydrogen, or fluoro; R^7 is hydrogen or R^5 and R^7 are taken together to form

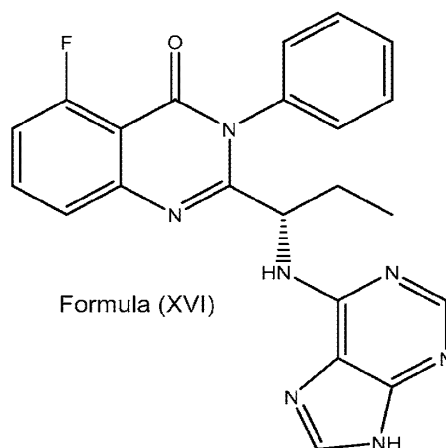


R⁸ is methyl, trifluoromethyl, chloro, or fluoro; R⁴ is hydrogen, fluoro, chloro, OH, OCH₃, OCH₂C≡CH, O(CH₂)₂N(CH₃)₂, C(=O)CH₃, C≡CH, CN, C(=O)NH₂, OCH₂C(=O)NH₂, O(CH₂)₂OCH₃, O(CH₂)₂N(CH₃)₂,



and R⁵ is methyl, ethyl, propyl, phenyl, CH₂OH, CH₂OCH₂C₆H₅, CH₂CF₃, CH₂OC(CH₃)₃, CH₂C≡CH, (CH₂)₃N(C₂H₅)₂, (CH₂)₃NH₂, (CH₂)₄NH₂, (CH₂)₃NHC(=O)OCH₂C₆H₅, or (CH₂)₄NHC(=O)OCH₂C₆H₅; R^c is hydrogen, methyl, fluoro, or bromo; and n is 0 or 1.

[00168] In a preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor is a PI3K-δ inhibitor of Formula (XVI):



which is (*S*)-2-(1-((9*H*-purin-6-yl)amino)propyl)-5-fluoro-3-phenylquinazolin-4(*3H*)-one (other names: 4(*3H*)-quinazolinone, 5-fluoro-3-phenyl-2-[(1*S*)-1-(9*H*-purin-6-ylamino)propyl], and 5-fluoro-3-phenyl-2-[(1*S*)-1-[(7*H*-purin-6-yl)amino]propyl} quinazolin-4(*3H*)-one) or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

[00169] In a preferred embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is (S)-2-(1-((9H-purin-6-yl)amino)propyl)-5-fluoro-3-phenylquinazolin-4(3H)-one or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

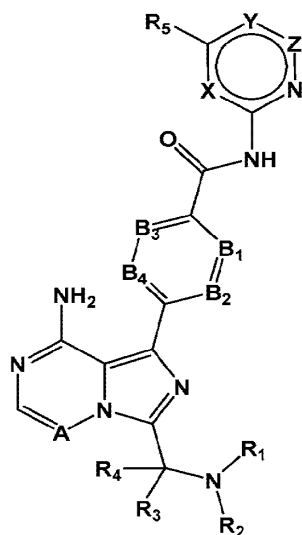
[00170] In an embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor or PI3K- δ inhibitor is 4(3*H*)-quinazolinone, 5-fluoro-3-phenyl-2-[(1*S*)-1-(9*H*-purin-6-ylamino)propyl]-5-fluoro-3-phenyl-2-[(1*S*)-1-[(7*H*-purin-6-yl)amino]propyl}quinazolin-4(3*H*)-one or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof

[00171] Other PI3K inhibitors suitable for use in the described combination with a BTK inhibitor also include, but are not limited to, those described in, for example, U.S. Patent No. 8,193,182 and U.S. Published Application Nos. 2013/0267521; 2013/0053362; 2013/0029984; 2013/0029982; 2012/0184568; and 2012/0059000.

BTK Inhibitors

[00172] The BTK inhibitor may be any BTK inhibitor known in the art. In particular, it is one of the BTK inhibitors described in more detail in the following paragraphs. Preferably, it is a compound of Formula XVII or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. In one specific embodiment, it is a compound of Formula XVIII or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

[00173] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XVII):



Formula (XVII)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

X is CH, N, O or S;

Y is C(R₆), N, O or S;

Z is CH, N or bond;

A is CH or N;

B₁ is N or C(R₇);

B₂ is N or C(R₈);

B₃ is N or C(R₉);

B₄ is N or C(R₁₀);

R₁ is R₁₁C(=O), R₁₂S(=O), R₁₃S(=O)₂ or (1-6C)alkyl optionally substituted with R₁₄;

R₂ is H, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl;

R₃ is H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl; or

R₂ and R₃ form, together with the N and C atom they are attached to, a (3-7C)heterocycloalkyl

optionally substituted with one or more fluorine, hydroxyl, (1-3C)alkyl, (1-3C)alkoxy or oxo;

R₄ is H or (C₁₋₃)alkyl;

R₅ is H, halogen, cyano, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl, any alkyl group of which is optionally substituted with one or more halogen; or R₅ is (C₆₋₁₀)aryl or (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl;

R₆ is H or (C₁₋₃)alkyl; or

R₅ and R₆ together may form a (C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl or (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkenyl, each optionally substituted with (C₁₋₃)alkyl or one or more halogens;

R₇ is H, halogen, CF₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₈ is H, halogen, CF₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy; or

R₇ and R₈ together with the carbon atoms they are attached to, form (C₆₋₁₀)aryl or (C₁₋₉)heteroaryl;

R₉ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₁₀ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₁₁ is independently selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl and (C₂₋₆)alkynyl, where each alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl is optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl; or R₁₁ is (C₁₋₃)alkyl-C(O)-S-(C₁₋₃)alkyl; or

R₁₁ is (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen or cyano;

R₁₂ and R₁₃ are independently selected from the group consisting of (C₂₋₆)alkenyl or (C₂₋₆)alkynyl, both optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl; or a (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen and cyano; and

R₁₄ is independently selected from the group consisting of halogen, cyano, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl and (C₂₋₆)alkynyl, both optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, (C₁₋₄)alkylamino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl and (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl;

with the proviso that:

0 to 2 atoms of X, Y, Z can simultaneously be a heteroatom;

when one atom selected from X, Y is O or S, then Z is a bond and the other atom selected from X, Y can not be O or S;

when Z is C or N then Y is C(R₆) or N and X is C or N;

0 to 2 atoms of B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are N;

with the terms used having the following meanings:

(C₁₋₂)alkyl means an alkyl group having 1 to 2 carbon atoms, being methyl or ethyl,

(C₁₋₃)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-3 carbon atoms, being methyl, ethyl, propyl or isopropyl;

(C₁₋₄)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-4 carbon atoms, being methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl and tert-butyl, (C₁₋₃)alkyl groups being preferred;

(C₁₋₅)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-5 carbon atoms, for example methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl and isopentyl,

(C₁₋₄)alkyl groups being preferred. (C₁₋₆)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-6 carbon atoms, for example methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, n-pentyl and n-hexyl. (C₁₋₅)alkyl groups are preferred, (C₁₋₄)alkyl being most preferred;

(C₁₋₂)alkoxy means an alkoxy group having 1-2 carbon atoms, the alkyl moiety having the same meaning as previously defined;

(C₁₋₃)alkoxy means an alkoxy group having 1-3 carbon atoms, the alkyl moiety having the same meaning as previously defined. (C₁₋₂)alkoxy groups are preferred;

(C₁₋₄)alkoxy means an alkoxy group having 1-4 carbon atoms, the alkyl moiety having the same meaning as previously defined. (C₁₋₃)alkoxy groups are preferred, (C₁₋₂)alkoxy groups being most preferred;

(C₂₋₄)alkenyl means a branched or unbranched alkenyl group having 2-4 carbon atoms, such as ethenyl, 2-propenyl, isobutenyl or 2-butenyl;

(C₂₋₆)alkenyl means a branched or unbranched alkenyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, such as ethenyl, 2-butenyl, and n-pentenyl, (C₂₋₄)alkenyl groups being most preferred;

(C₂₋₄)alkynyl means a branched or unbranched alkynyl group having 2-4 carbon atoms, such as ethynyl, 2-propynyl or 2-butylnyl;

(C₂₋₆)alkynyl means a branched or unbranched alkynyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, such as ethynyl, propynyl, n-butylnyl, n-pentynyl, isopentynyl, isohexynyl or n-hexynyl. (C₂₋₄)alkynyl

- groups are preferred; (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl means a cycloalkyl group having 3-6 carbon atoms, being cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl or cyclohexyl;
- (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl means a cycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, being cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl;
- (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl means a heterocycloalkyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms, and one or two heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S, which may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible, or a carbon atom; preferred heteroatoms are N or O; also preferred are piperidine, morpholine, pyrrolidine and piperazine; with the most preferred (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl being pyrrolidine; the heterocycloalkyl group may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible;
- (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl means a heterocycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms, and one or two heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S. Preferred heteroatoms are N or O; preferred (C₃₋₇) heterocycloalkyl groups are azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl or morpholinyl; more preferred (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl groups are piperidine, morpholine and pyrrolidine; and the heterocycloalkyl group may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible;
- (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy means a cycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, with the same meaning as previously defined, attached via a ring carbon atom to an exocyclic oxygen atom;
- (C₆₋₁₀)aryl means an aromatic hydrocarbon group having 6-10 carbon atoms, such as phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl or indenyl; the preferred (C₆₋₁₀)aryl group is phenyl;
- (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl means a substituted or unsubstituted aromatic group having 1-5 carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S; the (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl may optionally be substituted; preferred (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl groups are tetrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, triazinyl, thienyl or furyl, a more preferred (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl is pyrimidyl;
- (C₁₋₉)heteroaryl means a substituted or unsubstituted aromatic group having 1-9 carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S; the (C₁₋₉)heteroaryl may optionally be substituted; preferred (C₁₋₉)heteroaryl groups are quinoline, isoquinoline and indole;
- [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino means an amino group, monosubstituted with an alkyl group containing 1-4 carbon atoms having the same meaning as previously defined; preferred [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino group is methylamino;

di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino means an amino group, disubstituted with alkyl group(s), each containing 1-4 carbon atoms and having the same meaning as previously defined; preferred di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino group is dimethylamino;

halogen means fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine;

(C₁₋₃)alkyl-C(O)-S-(C₁₋₃)alkyl means an alkyl-carbonyl-thio-alkyl group, each of the alkyl groups having 1 to 3 carbon atoms with the same meaning as previously defined;

(C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl means a cycloalkenyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, preferably 5-7 carbon atoms; preferred (C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl groups are cyclopentenyl or cyclohexenyl; cyclohexenyl groups are most preferred;

(C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkenyl means a heterocycloalkenyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms; and 1 heteroatom selected from N, O and/or S; preferred (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkenyl groups are oxycyclohexenyl and azacyclohexenyl group.

In the above definitions with multifunctional groups, the attachment point is at the last group.

When, in the definition of a substituent, is indicated that "all of the alkyl groups" of said substituent are optionally substituted, this also includes the alkyl moiety of an alkoxy group.

A circle in a ring of Formula (XVII) indicates that the ring is aromatic.

Depending on the ring formed, the nitrogen, if present in X or Y, may carry a hydrogen.

[00174] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁ is C(R₇); B₂ is C(R₈); B₃ is C(R₉); B₄ is C(R₁₀); R₇, R₉, and R₁₀ are each H; and R₈ is hydrogen or methyl.

[00175] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), the ring containing X, Y and Z is selected from the group consisting of pyridyl, pyrimidyl, pyridazyl, triazinyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl and isoxazolyl.

[00176] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), the ring containing X, Y and Z is selected from the group consisting of pyridyl, pyrimidyl and pyridazyl.

[00177] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), the ring containing X, Y and Z is selected from the group consisting of pyridyl and pyrimidyl.

[00178] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), the ring containing X, Y and Z is pyridyl.

[00179] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₅ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, fluorine, methyl, methoxy and trifluoromethyl.

[00180] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₅ is hydrogen.

[00181] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₂ and R₃ together form a heterocycloalkyl ring selected from the group consisting of azetidiny, pyrrolidiny, piperidiny, homopiperidiny and morpholiny, optionally substituted with one or more of fluoro, hydroxyl, (C₁₋₃)alkyl and (C₁₋₃)alkoxy.

[00182] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₂ and R₃ together form a heterocycloalkyl ring selected from the group consisting of azetidiny, pyrrolidiny and piperidiny.

[00183] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₂ and R₃ together form a pyrrolidiny ring.

[00184] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), R₁ is independently selected from the group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl or (C₂₋₆)alkynyl, each optionally substituted with one or more substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl] amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl and (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl.

[00185] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X is N; Y and Z are CH; R₅ is CH₃; A is N; R₂, R₃ and R₄ are H; and R₁ is CO-CH₃.

[00186] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X and Y are N; Z is CH; R₅ is CH₃; A is N; R₂, R₃ and R₄ are H; and R₁ is CO-CH₃.

[00187] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X and Y are N; Z is CH; R₅ is CH₃; A is CH; R₂ and R₃ together form a piperidiny ring; R₄ is H; and R₁ is CO-ethenyl.

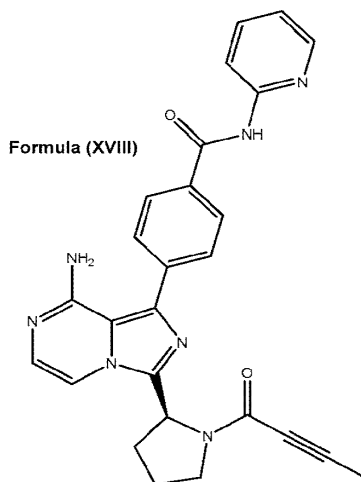
[00188] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X, Y and Z are CH; R₅ is H; A is CH; R₂ and R₃ together form a pyrrolidiny ring; R₄ is H; and R₁ is CO-propynyl.

[00189] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X, Y and Z are CH; R₅ is CH₃; A is CH; R₂ and R₃ together form a piperidinyl ring; R₄ is H; and R₁ is CO-propynyl.

[00190] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X and Y are N; Z is CH; R₅ is H; A is CH; R₂ and R₃ together form a morpholinyl ring; R₄ is H; and R₁ is CO-ethenyl.

[00191] In an exemplary embodiment of Formula (XVII), B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are CH; X and Y are N; Z is CH; R₅ is CH₃; A is CH; R₂ and R₃ together form a morpholinyl ring; R₄ is H; and R₁ is CO-propynyl.

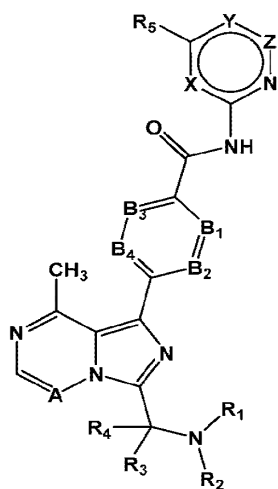
[00192] In an exemplary preferred embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XVIII):



which is (*S*)-4-(8-amino-3-(1-(but-2-ynoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)imidazo[1,5-*a*]pyrazin-1-yl)-*N*-(pyridin-2-yl)benzamide, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described at Example 6 of International Patent Application Publication No. WO 2013/010868. The preparation of this compound and related structures are described in the Examples of International Patent Application Publication No. WO 2013/010868.

[00193] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is (*S*)-4-(8-amino-3-(1-(but-2-ynoyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)imidazo[1,5-a]pyrazin-1-yl)-*N*-(pyridin-2-yl)benzamide or pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof.

[00194] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XIX) or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt of a compound of Formula (XIX):



Formula (XIX)

In Formula (XIX) the substituents are defined as:

X is CH, N, O or S;

Y is C(R₆), N, O or S;

Z is CH, N or bond;

A is CH or N;

B₁ is N or C(R₇);

B₂ is N or C(R₈);

B₃ is N or C(R₉);

B₄ is N or C(R₁₀);

R₁ is R₁₁C(O), R₁₂S(O), R₁₃SO₂ or (C₁₋₆)alkyl optionally substituted with R₁₄;

R₂ is H, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl;

R₃ is H, (C₁₋₆)alkyl or (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl; or

R₂ and R₃ form, together with the N and C atom they are attached to, a (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl optionally substituted with one or more fluorine, hydroxyl, (C₁₋₃)alkyl, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy or oxo;

R₄ is H or (C₁₋₃)alkyl;

R₅ is H, halogen, cyano, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl; all alkyl groups of R₅ are optionally substituted with one or more halogen; or R₅ is (C₆₋₁₀)aryl or (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl;

R₆ is H or (C₁₋₃)alkyl; or R₅ and R₆ together may form a (C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl, or (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkenyl; each optionally substituted with (C₁₋₃)alkyl, or one or more halogen;

R₇ is H, halogen, CF₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₈ is H, halogen, CF₃, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy; or

R₇ and R₈ together with the carbon atoms they are attached to, form (6-10C)aryl or (1-5C)heteroaryl;

R₉ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₁₀ is H, halogen, (C₁₋₃)alkyl or (C₁₋₃)alkoxy;

R₁₁ is independently selected from a group consisting of (C₁₋₆)alkyl, (C₂₋₆)alkenyl and (C₂₋₆)alkynyl each alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl, or

R₁₁ is (C₁₋₃)alkyl-C(O)-S-(C₁₋₃)alkyl; or

R₁₁ is (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from halogen or cyano.

R₁₂ and R₁₃ are independently selected from a group consisting of (C₂₋₆)alkenyl or (C₂₋₆)alkynyl both optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl; or

(C₁₋₅)heteroaryl optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from halogen or cyano;

R₁₄ is independently selected from a group consisting of halogen, cyano or (C₂₋₆)alkenyl or (C₂₋₆)alkynyl both optionally substituted with one or more groups selected from hydroxyl, (C₁₋₄)alkyl, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl, [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino, (C₁₋₃)alkoxy, (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy, (C₆₋₁₀)aryl, (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl or (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl;

with the proviso that

- 0 to 2 atoms of X, Y, Z can simultaneously be a heteroatom;
- when one atom selected from X, Y is O or S, then Z is a bond and the other atom selected from X, Y can not be O or S;
- when Z is C or N then Y is C(R₆) or N and X is C or N;
- 0 to 2 atoms of B₁, B₂, B₃ and B₄ are N;

with the terms used having the following meanings:

(C₁₋₃)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-3 carbon atoms, being methyl, ethyl, propyl or isopropyl;

(C₁₋₄)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-4 carbon atoms, being methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, *sec*-butyl and *tert*-butyl, (C₁₋₃)alkyl groups being preferred;

(C₁₋₆)alkyl means a branched or unbranched alkyl group having 1-6 carbon atoms, for example methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, *tert*-butyl, *n*-pentyl and *n*-hexyl. (C₁₋₅)alkyl groups are preferred, (C₁₋₄)alkyl being most preferred;

(C₁₋₂)alkoxy means an alkoxy group having 1-2 carbon atoms, the alkyl moiety having the same meaning as previously defined;

(C₁₋₃)alkoxy means an alkoxy group having 1-3 carbon atoms, the alkyl moiety having the same meaning as previously defined, with (C₁₋₂)alkoxy groups preferred;

(C₂₋₃)alkenyl means an alkenyl group having 2-3 carbon atoms, such as ethenyl or 2-propenyl;

(C₂₋₄)alkenyl means a branched or unbranched alkenyl group having 2-4 carbon atoms, such as ethenyl, 2-propenyl, isobutenyl or 2-butenyl;

(C₂₋₆)alkenyl means a branched or unbranched alkenyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, such as ethenyl, 2-butenyl, and *n*-pentenyl, with (C₂₋₄)alkenyl groups preferred, and (C₂₋₃)alkenyl groups even more preferred;

(C₂₋₄)alkynyl means a branched or unbranched alkynyl group having 2-4 carbon atoms, such as ethynyl, 2-propynyl or 2-butynyl;

(C₂₋₃)alkynyl means an alkynyl group having 2-3 carbon atoms, such as ethynyl or 2-propynyl;

(C₂₋₆)alkynyl means a branched or unbranched alkynyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, such as ethynyl, propynyl, *n*-butynyl, *n*-pentynyl, isopentynyl, isohexynyl or *n*-hexynyl, with (C₂₋₄)alkynyl groups preferred, and (2-3C)alkynyl groups more preferred;

- (C₃₋₆)cycloalkyl means a cycloalkyl group having 3-6 carbon atoms, being cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl or cyclohexyl;
- (C₃₋₇)cycloalkyl means a cycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, being cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl or cycloheptyl;
- (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl means a heterocycloalkyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms, and one or two heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S, which may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible, or a carbon atom; preferred heteroatoms are N or O; preferred groups are piperidine, morpholine, pyrrolidine and piperazine; a most preferred (C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkyl is pyrrolidine; and the heterocycloalkyl group may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible;
- (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl means a heterocycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms, and one or two heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S; preferred heteroatoms are N or O; preferred (C₃₋₇) heterocycloalkyl groups are azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, piperidinyl, homopiperidinyl or morpholinyl; more preferred (C₃₋₇)heterocycloalkyl groups are piperidine, morpholine and pyrrolidine; even more preferred are piperidine and pyrrolidine; and the heterocycloalkyl group may be attached via a heteroatom if feasible;
- (C₃₋₇)cycloalkoxy means a cycloalkyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, with the same meaning as previously defined, attached via a ring carbon atom to an exocyclic oxygen atom;
- (C₆₋₁₀)aryl means an aromatic hydrocarbon group having 6-10 carbon atoms, such as phenyl, naphthyl, tetrahydronaphthyl or indenyl; the preferred (C₆₋₁₀)aryl group is phenyl;
- (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl means a substituted or unsubstituted aromatic group having 1-5 carbon atoms and 1-4 heteroatoms selected from N, O and/or S, wherein the (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl may optionally be substituted.; preferred (C₁₋₅)heteroaryl groups are tetrazolyl, imidazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidyl, triazinyl, thienyl or furyl, and the more preferred (C₁₋₅) heteroaryl is pyrimidyl;
- [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino means an amino group, monosubstituted with an alkyl group containing 1-4 carbon atoms having the same meaning as previously defined; the preferred [(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino group is methylamino;
- di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino means an amino group, disubstituted with alkyl group(s), each containing 1-4 carbon atoms and having the same meaning as previously defined; the preferred di[(C₁₋₄)alkyl]amino group is dimethylamino;

halogen means fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine;

(C₁₋₃)alkyl-C(O)-S-(C₁₋₃)alkyl means an alkyl-carbonyl-thio-alkyl group, each of the alkyl groups having 1 to 3 carbon atoms with the same meaning as previously defined;

(C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl means a cycloalkenyl group having 3-7 carbon atoms, preferably 5-7 carbon atoms; preferred (C₃₋₇)cycloalkenyl groups are cyclopentenyl or cyclohexenyl; and cyclohexenyl groups are most preferred;

(C₂₋₆)heterocycloalkenyl means a heterocycloalkenyl group having 2-6 carbon atoms, preferably 3-5 carbon atoms; and 1 heteroatom selected from N, O and/or S; the preferred (C₂₋₆) heterocycloalkenyl groups are oxycyclohexenyl and azacyclohexenyl groups.

In the above definitions with multifunctional groups, the attachment point is at the last group.

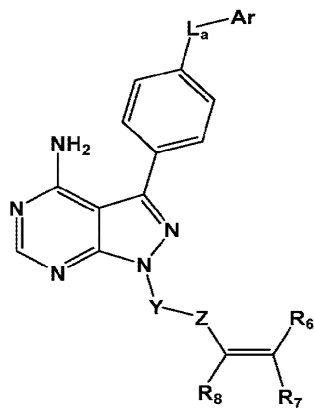
When, in the definition of a substituent, is indicated that "all of the alkyl groups" of said substituent are optionally substituted, this also includes the alkyl moiety of an alkoxy group.

A circle in a ring of Formula (XIX) indicates that the ring is aromatic.

Depending on the ring formed, the nitrogen, if present in X or Y, may carry a hydrogen.

[00195] In one embodiment the invention provides a compound according to Formula XIX, wherein B₁ is C(R₇); B₂ is C(R₈); B₃ is C(R₉) and B₄ is C(R₁₀).

[00196] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XX):



Formula (XX)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,
wherein:

L_a is CH_2 , O, NH or S;

Ar is a substituted or unsubstituted aryl, or a substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

Y is an optionally substituted group selected from the group consisting of alkyl, heteroalkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

Z is $\text{C}(=\text{O})$, $\text{OC}(=\text{O})$, $\text{NRC}(=\text{O})$, $\text{C}(=\text{S})$, $\text{S}(=\text{O})_x$, $\text{OS}(=\text{O})_x$ or $\text{NRS}(=\text{O})_x$, where x is 1 or 2;

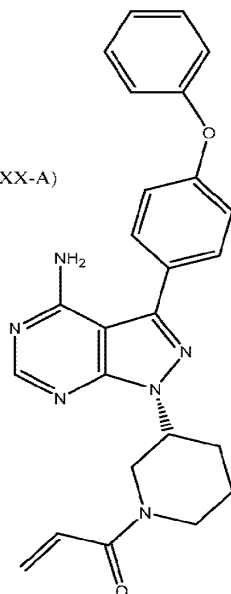
R^7 and R^8 are each independently H; or R^7 and R^8 taken together form a bond;

R^6 is H; and

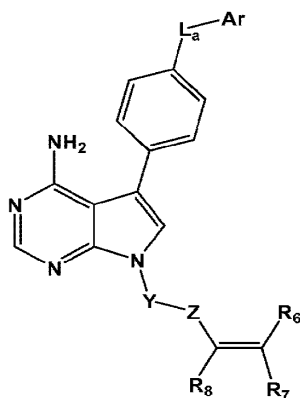
R is H or $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkyl.

[00197] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is ibrutinib or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is (R)-1-(3-(4-amino-3-(4-phenoxyphenyl)-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)prop-2-en-1-one. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is 1-[(3R)-3-[4-amino-3-(4-phenoxyphenyl)-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-1-yl]piperidin-1-yl]prop-2-en-1-one. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is (S)-1-(3-(4-amino-3-(4-phenoxyphenyl)-1H-pyrazolo[3,4-d]pyrimidin-1-yl)piperidin-1-yl)prop-2-en-1-one. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor has the structure of Formula (XX-A), or an enantiomer thereof, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, solvate, hydrate, cocrystal, or prodrug thereof.

Formula (XX-A)



[00198] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXI):



Formula (XXI)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

L_a is CH₂, O, NH or S;

Ar is a substituted or unsubstituted aryl, or a substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

Y is an optionally substituted group selected from the group consisting of alkyl, heteroalkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

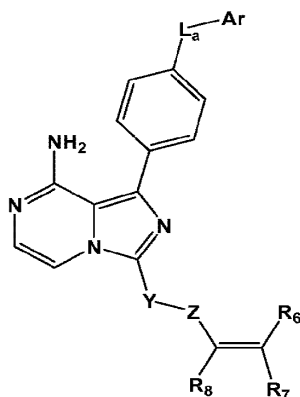
Z is C(=O), OC(=O), NRC(=O), C(=S), S(=O)_x, OS(=O)_x or NRS(=O)_x, where x is 1 or 2;

R⁷ and R⁸ are each H; or R⁷ and R⁸ taken together form a bond;

R⁶ is H; and

R is H or C₁-C₆alkyl.

[00199] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXII):



Formula (XXII)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

L_a is CH_2 , O, NH or S;

Ar is a substituted or unsubstituted aryl, or a substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

Y is an optionally substituted group selected from the group consisting of alkyl, heteroalkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

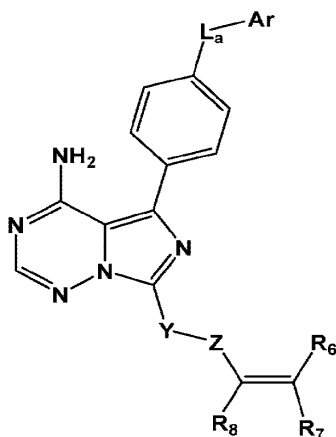
Z is $C(=O)$, $OC(=O)$, $NRC(=O)$, $C(=S)$, $S(=O)_x$, $OS(=O)_x$ or $NRS(=O)_x$, where x is 1 or 2;

R^7 and R^8 are each H; or R^7 and R^8 taken together form a bond;

R^6 is H; and

R is H or C_1 - C_6 alkyl.

[00200] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXIII):



Formula (XXIII)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

L_a is CH_2 , O, NH or S;

Ar is a substituted or unsubstituted aryl, or a substituted or unsubstituted heteroaryl;

Y is an optionally substituted group selected from the group consisting of alkyl, heteroalkyl, cycloalkyl, heterocycloalkyl, aryl and heteroaryl;

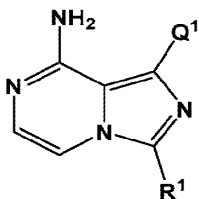
Z is $C(=O)$, $OC(=O)$, $NRC(=O)$, $C(=S)$, $S(=O)_x$, $OS(=O)_x$ or $NRS(=O)_x$, where x is 1 or 2;

R^7 and R^8 are each H; or R^7 and R^8 taken together form a bond;

R^6 is H; and

R is H or C_1 - C_6 alkyl.

[00201] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXIV):



Formula (XXIV)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

wherein:

Q^1 is aryl¹, heteroaryl¹, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, cycloalkenyl, or heterocycloalkenyl, any of which is optionally substituted by one to five independent G^1 substituents;

R^1 is alkyl, cycloalkyl, bicycloalkyl, aryl, heteroaryl, aralkyl, heteroaralkyl, heterocyclyl, or heterobicycloalkyl, any of which is optionally substituted by one or more independent G^{11} substituents;

G^1 and G^{41} are each independently halo, oxo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^2$, $-NR^2R^3(R^{3a})_{j1}$, $-C(O)R^2$, $-CO_2R^2$, $-CONR^2R^3$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j1}R^2$, $-SO_2NR^2R^3$, $NR^2(C=O)R^3$, $NR^2(C=O)OR^3$, $NR^2(C=O)NR^2R^3$, $NR^2S(O)_{j1}R^3$, $-(C=S)OR^2$, $-(C=O)SR^2$, $-NR^2(C=NR^3)NR^{2a}R^{3a}$, $-NR^2(C=NR^3)OR^{2a}$, $-NR^2(C=NR^3)SR^{3a}$, $-O(C=O)OR^2$, $-O(C=O)NR^2R^3$, $-O(C=O)SR^2$, $-S(C=O)OR^2$, $-S(C=O)NR^2R^3$, $C_{0-10}alkyl$, $C_{2-10}alkenyl$, $C_{2-10}alkynyl$, $C_{1-10}alkoxyC_{1-10}alkyl$, $C_{1-10}alkoxyC_{2-10}alkenyl$, $C_{1-10}alkoxyC_{2-10}alkynyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylthioC_{1-10}alkyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylthioC_{2-10}alkenyl$, $C_{1-10}alkylthioC_{2-10}alkynyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkenyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkylC_{1-10}alkyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkenylC_{1-10}alkyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkylC_{2-10}alkenyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkenylC_{2-10}alkenyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkylC_{2-10}alkynyl$, $cycloC_{3-8}alkenylC_{2-10}alkynyl$, $heterocyclyl-C_{0-10}alkyl$, $heterocyclyl-C_{2-10}alkenyl$, or $heterocyclyl-C_{2-10}alkynyl$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, oxo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{222}$, $-NR^{222}R^{333}(R^{333a})_{j1a}$, $-C(O)R^{222}$, $-CO_2R^{222}$, $-CONR^{222}R^{333}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j1a}R^{222}$, $-SO_2NR^{222}R^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)R^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)OR^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$, $NR^{222}S(O)_{j1a}R^{333}$, $-(C=S)OR^{222}$, $-(C=O)SR^{222}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})NR^{222a}R^{333a}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})OR^{222a}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})SR^{333a}$, $-O(C=O)OR^{222}$, $-O(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$, $-O(C=O)SR^{222}$, $-S(C=O)OR^{222}$, or $-S(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$ substituents; or $-(X^1)_n-(Y^1)_m-R^4$; or aryl- $C_{0-10}alkyl$, aryl- $C_{2-10}alkenyl$, or aryl- $C_{2-10}alkynyl$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{222}$, $-NR^{222}R^{333}(R^{333a})_{j2a}$, $-C(O)R^{222}$, $-CO_2R^{222}$, $-CONR^{222}R^{333}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j2a}R^{222}$, $-SO_2NR^{222}R^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)R^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)OR^{333}$, $NR^{222}(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$, $NR^{222}S(O)_{j2a}R^{333}$, $-(C=S)OR^{222}$, $-(C=O)SR^{222}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})NR^{222a}R^{333a}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})OR^{222a}$, $-NR^{222}(C=NR^{333})SR^{333a}$, $-O(C=O)OR^{222}$, $-O(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$, $-O(C=O)SR^{222}$, $-S(C=O)OR^{222}$, or $-S(C=O)NR^{222}R^{333}$ substituents; or hetaryl- $C_{0-10}alkyl$, hetaryl- $C_{2-10}alkenyl$, or hetaryl- $C_{2-10}alkynyl$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{222}$, $-NR^{222}$, $R^{333}(R^{333a})_{j3a}$, $-C(O)R^{222}$, $-CO_2R^{222}$, $-CONR^{222}R^{333}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j3a}R^{222}$, $-SO_2NR^{222}R^{333}$,

$\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{333}$, $\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{333}$, $\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{222}\text{R}^{333}$, $\text{NR}^{222}\text{S}(\text{O})_{j3a}\text{R}^{333}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})\text{OR}^{222}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{222}$, $-\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{333})\text{NR}^{222a}\text{R}^{333a}$, $-\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{333})\text{OR}^{222a}$, $-\text{NR}^{222}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{333})\text{SR}^{333a}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{222}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{222}\text{R}^{333}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{222}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{222}$, or $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{222}\text{R}^{333}$ substituents;

G^{11} is halo, oxo, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}(\text{R}^{3a1})_{j4}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{CONR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{j4}\text{R}^{21}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}$, $\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{31}$, $\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{31}$, $\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}$, $\text{NR}^{21}\text{S}(\text{O})_{j4}\text{R}^{31}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})\text{OR}^{21}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{21}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{31})\text{NR}^{2a1}\text{R}^{3a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{31})\text{OR}^{2a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{21}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{31})\text{SR}^{3a1}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{21}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{21}\text{R}^{31}$, $-\text{P}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{21}\text{OR}^{31}$, $\text{C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, oxo, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j4a}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CONR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{j4a}\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}\text{S}(\text{O})_{j4a}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{NR}^{222a1}\text{R}^{333a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{OR}^{222a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{SR}^{333a1}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{P}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}\text{OR}^{3331}$, or $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$ substituents; or $\text{aryl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{aryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{aryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j5a}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CONR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{j5a}\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}\text{S}(\text{O})_{j5a}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{NR}^{222a1}\text{R}^{333a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{OR}^{222a1}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{SR}^{333a1}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{P}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, or $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$ substituents; or $\text{hetaryl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{hetaryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{hetaryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-\text{CF}_3$, $-\text{OCF}_3$, $-\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j6a}$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CO}_2\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{CONR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{CN}$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{j6a}\text{R}^{2221}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{3331}$,

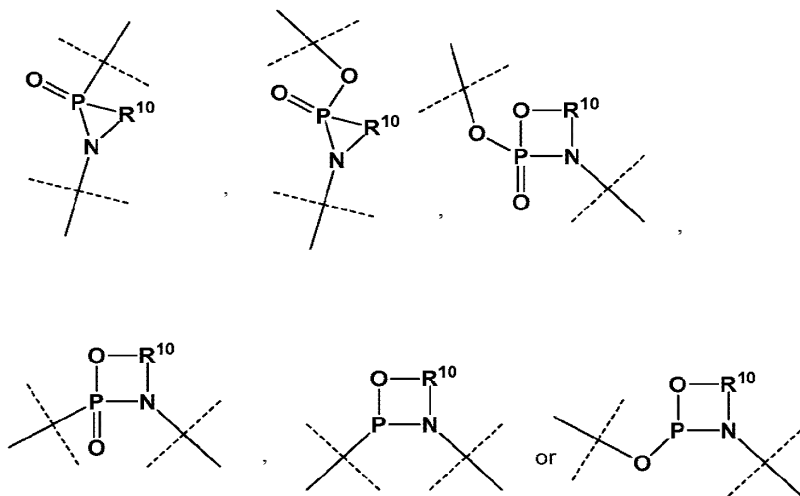
$\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $\text{NR}^{2221}\text{S}(\text{O})_{j6a}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{S})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{NR}^{2221}(\text{C}=\text{NR}^{3331})\text{SR}^{3331}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$, $-\text{O}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{SR}^{2221}$, $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}$, $-\text{P}(\text{O})\text{OR}^{2221}\text{OR}^{3331}$, or $-\text{S}(\text{C}=\text{O})\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}$ substituents; or G^{111} is taken together with the carbon to which it is attached to form a double bond which is substituted with R^5 and G^{111} ;

R^2 , R^{2a} , R^3 , R^{3a} , R^{222} , R^{222a} , R^{333} , R^{333a} , R^{21} , R^{2a1} , R^{31} , R^{3a1} , R^{2221} , R^{222a1} , R^{3331} , and R^{333a1} are each independently equal to $\text{C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkoxyC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-10}\text{alkylthioC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{1-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkylC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{cycloC}_{3-8}\text{alkenylC}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{heterocyclyl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, any of which is optionally substituted by one or more G^{111} substituents; or $\text{aryl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{aryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{aryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, $\text{hetaryl-C}_{0-10}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{hetaryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkenyl}$, or $\text{hetaryl-C}_{2-10}\text{alkynyl}$, any of which is optionally substituted by one or more G^{111} substituents; or in the case of $-\text{NR}^2\text{R}^3(\text{R}^{3a})_{j1}$ or $-\text{NR}^{222}\text{R}^{333}(\text{R}^{333a})_{j1a}$ or $-\text{NR}^{222}\text{R}^{333}(\text{R}^{333a})_{j2a}$ or $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j3a}$ or $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j4a}$ or $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j5a}$ or $-\text{NR}^{2221}\text{R}^{3331}(\text{R}^{333a1})_{j6a}$, R^2 and R^3 or R^{222} and R^{333} or R^{2221} and R^{3331} taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 3-10 membered saturated ring, unsaturated ring, heterocyclic saturated ring, or heterocyclic unsaturated ring, wherein said ring is optionally substituted by one or more G^{111} substituents;

X^1 and Y^1 are each independently $-\text{O}-$, $-\text{NR}^7-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_{j7}-$, $-\text{CR}^5\text{R}^6-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{S}-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{NR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{NHR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{NHSO}_2\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{NHC}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{NHR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}=\text{CH}-$, $-\text{C.ident.C}-$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^7)-$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$, $-\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{NR}^7\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{SON}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{SON}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$,

$\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{SO}_2\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(=\text{NOR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{CH}(\text{OR}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{OC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{NR}^7\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{OS}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{OS}(\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{S}(\text{O})_2\text{C}(\text{O})-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{SON}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{SON}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{SO}_2\text{N}(\text{R}^7)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{O})(\text{OR}^8)\text{O}-$, or $-\text{CH}(\text{R}^7)\text{N}(\text{C}(\text{O})\text{R}^7)\text{P}(\text{OR}^8)-$;

or X^1 and Y^1 are each independently represented by one of the following structural formulas:



R^{10} , taken together with the phosphinamide or phosphonamide, is a 5-, 6-, or 7-membered aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclyl ring system;

R^5 , R^6 , and G^{111} are each independently a C_{0-10} alkyl, C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{1-10} alkoxy C_{2-10} alkynyl, C_{1-10} alkylthio C_{1-10} alkyl, C_{1-10} alkylthio C_{2-10} alkenyl, C_{1-10} alkylthio C_{2-10} alkynyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkenyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkyl C_{1-10} alkyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkenyl C_{1-10} alkyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkyl C_{2-10} alkenyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkenyl C_{2-10} alkenyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkyl C_{2-10} alkynyl, cyclo C_{3-8} alkenyl C_{2-10} alkynyl, heterocyclyl- C_{0-10} alkyl, heterocyclyl- C_{2-10} alkenyl, or heterocyclyl- C_{2-10} alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-C(O)R^{77}$, $-CO_2R^{77}$, $-CONR^{77}R^{87}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j5a}R^{77}$, $-SO_2NR^{77}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)OR^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)NR^{78}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}S(O)_{j5a}R^{87}$, $-(C=S)OR^{77}$, $-(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})NR^{78}R^{88}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})OR^{78}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})SR^{78}$, $-O(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-O(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-O(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-S(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-P(O)OR^{77}OR^{87}$, or $-S(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$ substituents; or aryl- C_{0-10} alkyl, aryl- C_{2-10} alkenyl, or aryl- C_{2-10} alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-C(O)R^{77}$, $-CO_2R^{77}$, $-CONR^{77}R^{87}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j5a}R^{77}$, $-SO_2NR^{77}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)OR^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)NR^{78}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}S(O)_{j5a}R^{87}$, $-(C=S)OR^{77}$, $-(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})NR^{78}R^{88}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})OR^{78}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})SR^{78}$, $-O(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-O(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-O(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-S(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-P(O)OR^{77}OR^{87}$, or $-S(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$ substituents; or hetaryl- C_{0-10} alkyl, hetaryl- C_{2-10} alkenyl, or hetaryl- C_{2-10} alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, $-CF_3$, $-OCF_3$, $-OR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-C(O)R^{77}$, $-CO_2R^{77}$, $-CONR^{77}R^{87}$, $-NO_2$, $-CN$, $-S(O)_{j5a}R^{77}$, $-SO_2NR^{77}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)R^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)OR^{87}$, $NR^{77}(C=O)NR^{78}R^{87}$, $NR^{77}S(O)_{j5a}R^{87}$, $-(C=S)OR^{77}$, $-(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})NR^{78}R^{88}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})OR^{78}$, $-NR^{77}(C=NR^{87})SR^{78}$, $-O(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-O(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$, $-O(C=O)SR^{77}$, $-S(C=O)OR^{77}$, $-P(O)OR^{77}OR^{87}$, or $-S(C=O)NR^{77}R^{87}$ substituents; or R^5 with R^6 taken together with the respective carbon atom to which they are attached, form a 3-10 membered saturated or unsaturated ring, wherein said ring is optionally substituted with R^{69} ; or R^5 with R^6 taken together with the respective carbon atom to which they are attached, form a 3-10 membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring, wherein said ring is optionally substituted with R^{69} ;

R^7 and R^8 are each independently H, acyl, alkyl, alkenyl, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl or cycloalkyl, any of which is optionally substituted by one or more G^{111} substituents;

R⁴ is H, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl, cycloalkyl, heterocyclyl, cycloalkenyl, or heterocycloalkenyl, any of which is optionally substituted by one or more G⁴¹ substituents;

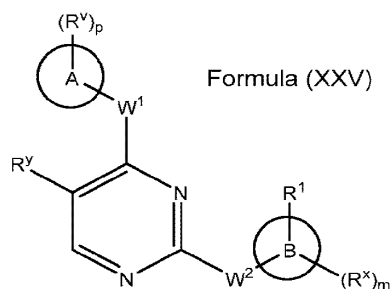
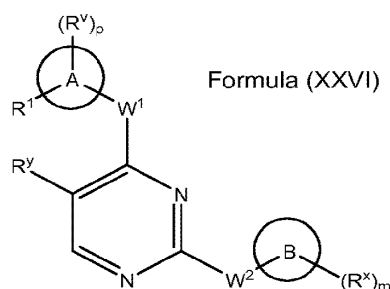
R⁶⁹ is equal to halo, -OR⁷⁸, -SH, -NR⁷⁸R⁸⁸, -CO₂R⁷⁸, -CONR⁷⁸R⁸⁸, -NO₂, -CN, -S(O)₂R⁷⁸, -SO₂NR⁷⁸R⁸⁸, C₀₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, heterocyclyl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, heterocyclyl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, or heterocyclyl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -OR⁷⁷⁸, -SO₂NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, or -NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸ substituents; or aryl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, aryl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, or aryl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -OR⁷⁷⁸, C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CONR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, -SO₂NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, or -NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸ substituents; or hetaryl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, hetaryl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, or hetaryl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -OR⁷⁷⁸, C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CONR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, -SO₂NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, or -NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸ substituents; or mono(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono(aryl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, di(aryl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, or -N(C₁₋₆alkyl)-C₁₋₆alkyl-aryl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -OR⁷⁷⁸, C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CONR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, -SO₂NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, or -NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸ substituents; or in the case of -NR⁷⁸R⁸⁸, R⁷⁸ and R⁸⁸ taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached form a 3-10 membered saturated ring, unsaturated ring, heterocyclic saturated ring, or heterocyclic unsaturated ring, wherein said ring is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, hydroxy, nitro, C₁₋₁₀alkoxy, -SO₂NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸, or -NR⁷⁷⁸R⁸⁸⁸ substituents;

R⁷⁷, R⁷⁸, R⁸⁷, R⁸⁸, R⁷⁷⁸, and R⁸⁸⁸ are each independently C₀₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxyC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylthioC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₂₋₁₀alkenyl,

cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkylC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, cycloC₃₋₈alkenylC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, heterocyclyl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, heterocyclyl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, heterocyclyl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, C₁₋₁₀alkylcarbonyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenylcarbonyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynylcarbonyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxycarbonyl, C₁₋₁₀alkoxycarbonylC₁₋₁₀alkyl, monoC₁₋₆alkylaminocarbonyl, diC₁₋₆alkylaminocarbonyl, mono(aryl)aminocarbonyl, di(aryl)aminocarbonyl, or C₁₋₁₀alkyl(aryl)aminocarbonyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, hydroxy, nitro, C₁₋₁₀alkoxy, -SO₂N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), or -N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl) substituents; or aryl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, aryl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, or aryl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -O(C₀₋₄alkyl), C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CON(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₁₀alkyl), -SO₂N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), or -N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl) substituents; or hetaryl-C₀₋₁₀alkyl, hetaryl-C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, or hetaryl-C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -O(C₀₋₄alkyl), C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CON(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), -SO₂N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), or -N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl) substituents; or mono(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, di(C₁₋₆alkyl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, mono(aryl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, di(aryl)aminoC₁₋₆alkyl, or -N(C₁₋₆alkyl)-C₁₋₆alkyl-aryl, any of which is optionally substituted with one or more independent halo, cyano, nitro, -O(C₀₋₄alkyl), C₁₋₁₀alkyl, C₂₋₁₀alkenyl, C₂₋₁₀alkynyl, haloC₁₋₁₀alkyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkenyl, haloC₂₋₁₀alkynyl, -COOH, C₁₋₄alkoxycarbonyl, -CON(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), -SO₂N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl), or -N(C₀₋₄alkyl)(C₀₋₄alkyl) substituents; and

n, m, j1, j1a, j2a, j3a, j4, j4a, j5a, j6a, j7, and j8 are each independently equal to 0, 1, or 2.

[00202] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound selected from the structures disclosed in U.S. Patent Nos. 8,450,335 and 8,609,679, and U.S. Patent Application Publication Nos. 2010/0029610 A1, 2012/0077832 A1, 2013/0065879 A1, 2013/0072469 A1, and 2013/0165462 A1. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXV) or Formula (XXVI):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

Ring A is an optionally substituted group selected from phenyl, a 3-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated carbocyclic ring, an 8-10 membered bicyclic saturated, partially unsaturated or aryl ring, a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 4-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 7-10 membered bicyclic saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or an 8-10 membered bicyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

Ring B is an optionally substituted group selected from phenyl, a 3-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated carbocyclic ring, an 8-10 membered bicyclic saturated, partially unsaturated or aryl ring, a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 4-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 7-10 membered bicyclic saturated or partially unsaturated

heterocyclic ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or an 8-10 membered bicyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

R¹ is a warhead group;

R^y is hydrogen, halogen, —CN, —CF₃, C₁₋₄ aliphatic, C₁₋₄ haloaliphatic, —OR, —C(O)R, or —C(O)N(R)₂;

each R group is independently hydrogen or an optionally substituted group selected from C₁₋₆ aliphatic, phenyl, a 4-7 membered heterocyclic ring having 1-2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

W¹ and W² are each independently a covalent bond or a bivalent C₁₋₃ alkylene chain wherein one methylene unit of W¹ or W² is optionally replaced by —NR²—, —N(R²)C(O)—, —C(O)N(R²)—, —N(R²)SO₂—, —SO₂N(R²)—, —O—, —C(O)—, —OC(O)—, —C(O)O—, —S—, —SO— or —SO₂—;

R² is hydrogen, optionally substituted C₁₋₆ aliphatic, or —C(O)R, or:

R² and a substituent on Ring A are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 4-6 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aromatic fused ring, or:

R² and R^y are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 4-7 membered partially unsaturated or aromatic fused ring;

m and p are independently 0-4; and

R^x and R^v are independently selected from —R, halogen, —OR, —O(CH₂)_qOR, —CN, —NO₂, —SO₂R, —SO₂N(R)₂, —SOR, —C(O)R, —CO₂R, —C(O)N(R)₂, —NRC(O)R, —NRC(O)NR₂, —NRSO₂R, or —N(R)₂, wherein q is 1-4; or:

R^x and R¹ when concurrently present on Ring B are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 5-7 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aryl ring having 0-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, wherein said ring is substituted with a warhead group and 0-3 groups independently selected from oxo, halogen, —CN, or C₁₋₆ aliphatic; or

R^v and R¹ when concurrently present on Ring A are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 5-7 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aryl ring having 0-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, wherein said ring is substituted with

a warhead group and 0-3 groups independently selected from oxo, halogen, —CN, or C₁₋₆ aliphatic.

[00203] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXV) or Formula (XXVI), wherein:

Ring A is an optionally substituted group selected from phenyl, a 3-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated carbocyclic ring, an 8-10 membered bicyclic saturated, partially unsaturated or aryl ring, a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 4-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 7-10 membered bicyclic saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or an 8-10 membered bicyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

Ring B is an optionally substituted group selected from phenyl, a 3-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated carbocyclic ring, an 8-10 membered bicyclic saturated, partially unsaturated or aryl ring, a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 4-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 7-10 membered bicyclic saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or an 8-10 membered bicyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

R¹ is -L-Y, wherein:

L is a covalent bond or a bivalent C₁₋₈ saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched, hydrocarbon chain, wherein one, two, or three methylene units of L are optionally and independently replaced by cyclopropylene, —NR—, —N(R)C(O)—, —C(O)N(R)—, —N(R)SO₂—, —SO₂N(R)—, —O—, —C(O)—, —OC(O)—, —C(O)O—, —S—, —SO—, —SO₂—, —C(=S)—, —C(=NR)—, —N=N—, or —C(=N₂)—;

Y is hydrogen, C₁₋₆ aliphatic optionally substituted with oxo, halogen, or CN, or a 3-10 membered monocyclic or bicyclic, saturated, partially unsaturated, or aryl ring having 0-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, and wherein said ring is substituted with at 1-4 groups independently selected from -Q-Z, oxo, NO₂, halogen, CN, or C₁₋₆ aliphatic, wherein:

Q is a covalent bond or a bivalent C₁₋₆ saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched, hydrocarbon chain, wherein one or two methylene units of Q are optionally and independently replaced by —NR—, —S—, —O—, —C(O)—, —SO—, or —SO₂—; and

Z is hydrogen or C₁₋₆ aliphatic optionally substituted with oxo, halogen, or CN;

R^y is hydrogen, halogen, —CN, —CF₃, C₁₋₄ aliphatic, C₁₋₄ haloaliphatic, —OR, —C(O)R, or —C(O)N(R)₂;

each R group is independently hydrogen or an optionally substituted group selected from C₁₋₆ aliphatic, phenyl, a 4-7 membered heterocyclic ring having 1-2 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur;

W¹ and W² are each independently a covalent bond or a bivalent C₁₋₃ alkylene chain wherein one methylene unit of W¹ or W² is optionally replaced by —NR²—, —N(R²)C(O)—, —C(O)N(R²)—, —N(R²)SO₂—, —SO₂N(R²)—, —O—, —C(O)—, —OC(O)—, —C(O)O—, —S—, —SO— or —SO₂—;

R² is hydrogen, optionally substituted C₁₋₆ aliphatic, or —C(O)R, or:

R² and a substituent on Ring A are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 4-6 membered partially unsaturated or aromatic fused ring; or

R² and R^y are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 4-6 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aromatic fused ring;

m and p are independently 0-4; and

R^x and R^y are independently selected from $-R$, halogen, $-OR$, $-O(CH_2)_qOR$, $-CN$, $-NO_2$, $-SO_2R$, $-SO_2N(R)_2$, $-SOR$, $-C(O)R$, $-CO_2R$, $-C(O)N(R)_2$, $-NRC(O)R$, $-NRC(O)NR_2$, $-NRSO_2R$, or $-N(R)_2$, or:

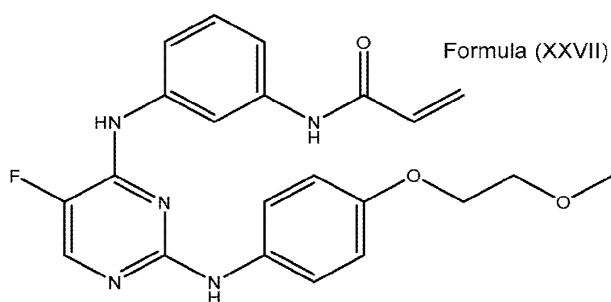
R^x and R^1 when concurrently present on Ring B are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 5-7 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aryl ring having 0-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, wherein said ring is substituted with a warhead group and 0-3 groups independently selected from oxo, halogen, $-CN$, or C_{1-6} aliphatic; or

R^y and R^1 when concurrently present on Ring A are taken together with their intervening atoms to form a 5-7 membered saturated, partially unsaturated, or aryl ring having 0-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, wherein said ring is substituted with a warhead group and 0-3 groups independently selected from oxo, halogen, $-CN$, or C_{1-6} aliphatic.

As defined generally above, Ring A is an optionally substituted group selected from phenyl, a 3-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated carbocyclic ring, an 8-10 membered bicyclic saturated, partially unsaturated or aryl ring, a 5-6 membered monocyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 4-7 membered saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, a 7-10 membered bicyclic saturated or partially unsaturated heterocyclic ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur, or an 8-10 membered bicyclic heteroaryl ring having 1-5 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur. In certain embodiments, Ring A is an optionally substituted phenyl group. In some embodiments, Ring A is an optionally substituted naphthyl ring or an optionally substituted bicyclic 8-10 membered heteroaryl ring having 1-4 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur. In certain other embodiments, Ring A is an optionally substituted 3-7 membered carbocyclic ring. In yet other embodiments, Ring A is an optionally substituted 4-7 membered heterocyclic ring having 1-3 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, or sulfur.

In certain embodiments, Ring A is substituted as defined herein. In some embodiments, Ring A is substituted with one, two, or three groups independently selected from halogen, R^o , or $-(CH_2)_{0-4}OR^o$, or $-O(CH_2)_{0-4}R^o$, wherein each R^o is an alkyl or aryl group. Exemplary substituents on Ring A include Br, I, Cl, methyl, $-CF_3$, $-C\equiv CH$, $-OCH_2$ phenyl, $-OCH_2$ (fluorophenyl), or $-OCH_2$ pyridyl.

[00204] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is CC-292. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXVII):

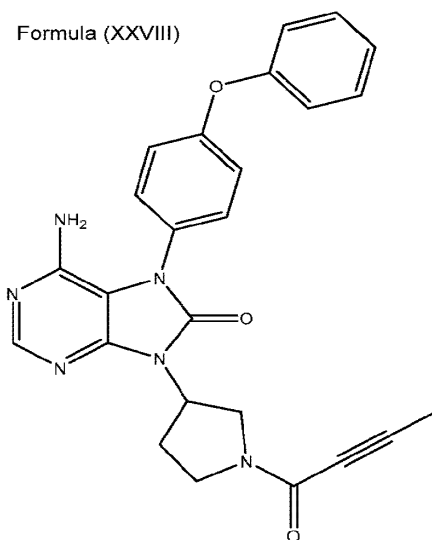


which is *N*-(3-((5-fluoro-2-((4-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenyl)amino)pyrimidin-4-yl)amino)phenyl)acrylamide, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, in an exemplary embodiment a hydrochloride salt or besylate salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2010/0029610 A1 at Example 20. The preparation of the hydrochloride salt or besylate salt of this compound is described in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2012/0077832 A1.

[00205] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is *N*-(3-((5-fluoro-2-((4-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenyl)amino)pyrimidin-4-yl)amino)phenyl)acrylamide or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a hydrochloride salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2012/0077832 A1.

[00206] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is (*N*-(3-(5-fluoro-2-(4-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenylamino)pyrimidin-4-ylamino)phenyl)acrylamide), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a besylate salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2010/0029610 A1 at Example 20. The preparation of its besylate salt is described in U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2012/0077832 A1.

[00207] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XXVIII):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is the hydrochloride salt of a compound of Formula (XXVIII). The preparation of this compound is described in International Patent Application Publication No. WO 2013/081016 A1. In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is 6-amino-9-(1-(but-2-ynoyl)pyrrolidin-3-yl)-7-(4-phenoxyphenyl)-7,9-dihydro-8*H*-purin-8-one or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a hydrochloride salt thereof.

[00208] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is 6-amino-9-[(3*R*)-1-(2-butynoyl)-3-pyrrolidinyl]-7-(4- phenoxyphenyl)-7,9-dihydro-8*H*-purin-8-one or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a hydrochloride salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described in International Patent Application Publication No. WO 2013/081016 A1.

[00209] In an exemplary embodiment, the BTK inhibitor is 6-amino-9-[(3*S*)-1-(2-butynoyl)-3-pyrrolidinyl]-7-(4- phenoxyphenyl)-7,9-dihydro-8*H*-purin-8-one or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, or a hydrochloride salt thereof. The preparation of this compound is described in International Patent Application Publication No. WO 2013/081016 A1.

[00210] BTK inhibitors suitable for use in the described combination with a PI3K inhibitor, the PI3K inhibitor in selected embodiments being selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ

inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor also include, but are not limited to, those described in, for example, International Patent Application Publication Nos. WO 2013/010868; WO 2012/158843; WO 2012/135944; WO 2012/135937; U.S. Patent Application Publication No. 2011/0177011; and U.S. Patent Nos. 8,501,751; 8,476,284; 8,008,309; 7,960,396; 7,825,118; 7,732,454; 7,514,444; 7,459,554; 7,405,295; and 7,393,848.

Pharmaceutical Compositions

[00211] In one embodiment, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor. In selected embodiments, the PI3K inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor. Said pharmaceutical composition typically also comprises at least one pharmaceutically acceptable excipient.

[00212] Said pharmaceutical composition is in one embodiment for use in the treatment of the diseases and conditions described below. In particular, it is for use in the treatment of hyperproliferative disorders.

[00213] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor for treating solid tumor cancers, lymphomas and leukemia. In selected embodiments, the PI3K inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor.

[00214] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor, including a PI3K inhibitor selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ , a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, and a BTK inhibitor for the treatment of disorders such as hyperproliferative disorder including but not limited to cancer such as acute myeloid leukemia, thymus, brain, lung, squamous cell, skin, eye, retinoblastoma, intraocular melanoma, oral cavity and oropharyngeal, bladder, gastric, stomach, pancreatic, bladder, breast, cervical, head, neck, renal, kidney, liver, ovarian, prostate, colorectal, esophageal, testicular, gynecological, thyroid, CNS, PNS, AIDS-related (*e.g.*, lymphoma and Kaposi's sarcoma) or viral-induced cancer. In some embodiments, said pharmaceutical composition is for the treatment of a non-cancerous hyperproliferative disorder such as benign

hyperplasia of the skin (*e.g.*, psoriasis), restenosis, or prostate (*e.g.*, benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH)).

[00215] The invention further provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor for the prevention of blastocyte implantation in a mammal.

[00216] The invention also provides a pharmaceutical composition comprising a combination of a PI3K inhibitor and a BTK inhibitor for treating a disease related to vasculogenesis or angiogenesis in a mammal which can manifest as tumor angiogenesis, chronic inflammatory disease such as rheumatoid arthritis, inflammatory bowel disease, atherosclerosis, skin diseases such as psoriasis, eczema, and scleroderma, diabetes, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, age-related macular degeneration, hemangioma, glioma, melanoma, Kaposi's sarcoma and ovarian, breast, lung, pancreatic, prostate, colon and epidermoid cancer.

[00217] The pharmaceutical compositions are typically formulated to provide a therapeutically effective amount of a combination of a PI3K inhibitor, including a PI3K inhibitor selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, and BTK inhibitor as the active ingredients, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, ester, prodrug, solvate, or hydrate thereof. Where desired, the pharmaceutical compositions contain a pharmaceutically acceptable salt and/or coordination complex thereof, and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable excipients, carriers, including inert solid diluents and fillers, diluents, including sterile aqueous solution and various organic solvents, permeation enhancers, solubilizers and adjuvants.

[00218] The pharmaceutical compositions are administered as a combination of a PI3K inhibitor, including a PI3K inhibitor selected from the group consisting of a PI3K- γ inhibitor, a PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor, and a BTK inhibitor. Where desired, other agent(s) may be mixed into a preparation or both components may be formulated into separate preparations for use in combination separately or at the same time. A kit containing both components formulated into separate preparations for said use is also provided by the invention.

[00219] The weight ratio of the PI3K inhibitor to the BTK inhibitor in the combination is typically with the range from 0.01 to 100, preferably from 2.5:1 to 1:2.5, and more preferably about 1:1.

[00220] In selected embodiments, the concentration of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors provided in the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention is independently less than, for example, 100%, 90%, 80%, 70%, 60%, 50%, 40%, 30%, 20%, 19%, 18%, 17%, 16%, 15%, 14%, 13%, 12%, 11%, 10%, 9%, 8%, 7%, 6%, 5%, 4%, 3%, 2%, 1%, 0.5%, 0.4%, 0.3%, 0.2%, 0.1%, 0.09%, 0.08%, 0.07%, 0.06%, 0.05%, 0.04%, 0.03%, 0.02%, 0.01%, 0.009%, 0.008%, 0.007%, 0.006%, 0.005%, 0.004%, 0.003%, 0.002%, 0.001%, 0.0009%, 0.0008%, 0.0007%, 0.0006%, 0.0005%, 0.0004%, 0.0003%, 0.0002% or 0.0001% w/w, w/v or v/v of each of the BTK or PI3K inhibitors.

[00221] In selected embodiments, the concentration of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors provided in the pharmaceutical compositions of the invention is independently greater than 90%, 80%, 70%, 60%, 50%, 40%, 30%, 20%, 19.75%, 19.50%, 19.25% 19%, 18.75%, 18.50%, 18.25% 18%, 17.75%, 17.50%, 17.25% 17%, 16.75%, 16.50%, 16.25% 16%, 15.75%, 15.50%, 15.25% 15%, 14.75%, 14.50%, 14.25% 14%, 13.75%, 13.50%, 13.25% 13%, 12.75%, 12.50%, 12.25% 12%, 11.75%, 11.50%, 11.25% 11%, 10.75%, 10.50%, 10.25% 10%, 9.75%, 9.50%, 9.25% 9%, 8.75%, 8.50%, 8.25% 8%, 7.75%, 7.50%, 7.25% 7%, 6.75%, 6.50%, 6.25% 6%, 5.75%, 5.50%, 5.25% 5%, 4.75%, 4.50%, 4.25% 4%, 3.75%, 3.50%, 3.25% 3%, 2.75%, 2.50%, 2.25% 2%, 1.75%, 1.50%, 1.25% 1%, 0.5%, 0.4%, 0.3%, 0.2%, 0.1%, 0.09%, 0.08%, 0.07%, 0.06%, 0.05%, 0.04%, 0.03%, 0.02%, 0.01%, 0.009%, 0.008%, 0.007%, 0.006%, 0.005%, 0.004%, 0.003%, 0.002%, 0.001%, 0.0009%, 0.0008%, 0.0007%, 0.0006%, 0.0005%, 0.0004%, 0.0003%, 0.0002% or 0.0001% w/w, w/v, or v/v of each of the BTK or PI3K inhibitors.

[00222] In selected embodiments, the concentration of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors of the invention is independently in the range from about 0.0001% to about 50%, about 0.001% to about 40%, about 0.01% to about 30%, about 0.02% to about 29%, about 0.03% to about 28%, about 0.04% to about 27%, about 0.05% to about 26%, about 0.06% to about 25%, about 0.07% to about 24%, about 0.08% to about 23%, about 0.09% to about 22%, about 0.1% to about 21%, about 0.2% to about 20%, about 0.3% to about 19%, about 0.4% to about 18%, about 0.5% to about 17%, about 0.6% to about 16%, about 0.7% to about 15%, about 0.8% to about 14%, about 0.9% to about 12% or about 1% to about 10% w/w, w/v or v/v. v/v of each of the BTK or PI3K inhibitors.

[00223] In selected embodiments, the concentration of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors of the invention is independently in the range from about 0.001% to about 10%, about 0.01% to about 5%, about 0.02% to about 4.5%, about 0.03% to about 4%, about 0.04% to about 3.5%, about 0.05% to about 3%, about 0.06% to about 2.5%, about 0.07% to about 2%, about 0.08% to about 1.5%, about 0.09% to about 1%, about 0.1% to about 0.9% w/w, w/v or v/v of each of the BTK or PI3K inhibitors.

[00224] In selected embodiments, the amount of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors of the invention is independently equal to or less than 10 g, 9.5 g, 9.0 g, 8.5 g, 8.0 g, 7.5 g, 7.0 g, 6.5 g, 6.0 g, 5.5 g, 5.0 g, 4.5 g, 4.0 g, 3.5 g, 3.0 g, 2.5 g, 2.0 g, 1.5 g, 1.0 g, 0.95 g, 0.9 g, 0.85 g, 0.8 g, 0.75 g, 0.7 g, 0.65 g, 0.6 g, 0.55 g, 0.5 g, 0.45 g, 0.4 g, 0.35 g, 0.3 g, 0.25 g, 0.2 g, 0.15 g, 0.1 g, 0.09 g, 0.08 g, 0.07 g, 0.06 g, 0.05 g, 0.04 g, 0.03 g, 0.02 g, 0.01 g, 0.009 g, 0.008 g, 0.007 g, 0.006 g, 0.005 g, 0.004 g, 0.003 g, 0.002 g, 0.001 g, 0.0009 g, 0.0008 g, 0.0007 g, 0.0006 g, 0.0005 g, 0.0004 g, 0.0003 g, 0.0002 g or 0.0001 g.

[00225] In selected embodiments, the amount of each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors of the invention is independently more than 0.0001 g, 0.0002 g, 0.0003 g, 0.0004 g, 0.0005 g, 0.0006 g, 0.0007 g, 0.0008 g, 0.0009 g, 0.001 g, 0.0015 g, 0.002 g, 0.0025 g, 0.003 g, 0.0035 g, 0.004 g, 0.0045 g, 0.005 g, 0.0055 g, 0.006 g, 0.0065 g, 0.007 g, 0.0075 g, 0.008 g, 0.0085 g, 0.009 g, 0.0095 g, 0.01 g, 0.015 g, 0.02 g, 0.025 g, 0.03 g, 0.035 g, 0.04 g, 0.045 g, 0.05 g, 0.055 g, 0.06 g, 0.065 g, 0.07 g, 0.075 g, 0.08 g, 0.085 g, 0.09 g, 0.095 g, 0.1 g, 0.15 g, 0.2 g, 0.25 g, 0.3 g, 0.35 g, 0.4 g, 0.45 g, 0.5 g, 0.55 g, 0.6 g, 0.65 g, 0.7 g, 0.75 g, 0.8 g, 0.85 g, 0.9 g, 0.95 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2 g, 2.5 g, 3 g, 3.5 g, 4 g, 4.5 g, 5 g, 5.5 g, 6 g, 6.5 g, 7 g, 7.5 g, 8 g, 8.5 g, 9 g, 9.5 g or 10 g.

[00226] Each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors according to the invention is effective over a wide dosage range. For example, in the treatment of adult humans, dosages independently range from 0.01 to 1000 mg, from 0.5 to 100 mg, from 1 to 50 mg per day, and from 5 to 40 mg per day are examples of dosages that may be used. The exact dosage will depend upon the route of administration, the form in which the compound is administered, the gender and age of the subject to be treated, the body weight of the subject to be treated, and the preference and experience of the attending physician.

[00227] Efficacy of the compounds and combinations of compounds described herein in treating, preventing and/or managing the indicated diseases or disorders can be tested using various animal models known in the art. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing asthma can be assessed using the ova induced asthma model described, for example, in Lee *et al.*, J. Allergy Clin. Immunol. 118(2):403-9 (2006). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing arthritis (*e.g.*, rheumatoid or psoriatic arthritis) can be assessed using the autoimmune animal models described in, for example, Williams *et al.*, Chem Biol, 17(2):123-34 (2010), WO 2009/088986, WO 2009/088880, and WO 2011/008302. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing psoriasis can be assessed using transgenic or knockout mouse model with targeted mutations in epidermis, vasculature or immune cells, mouse model resulting from spontaneous mutations, and immuno-deficient mouse model with xenotransplantation of human skin or immune cells, all of which are described, for example, in Boehncke *et al.*, Clinics in Dermatology, 25: 596-605 (2007). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing fibrosis or fibrotic conditions can be assessed using the unilateral ureteral obstruction model of renal fibrosis, which is described, for example, in Chevalier *et al.*, Kidney International 75:1145-1152 (2009); the bleomycin induced model of pulmonary fibrosis described in, for example, Moore *et al.*, Am. J. Physiol. Lung. Cell. Mol. Physiol. 294:L152-L160 (2008); a variety of liver/biliary fibrosis models described in, for example, Chuang *et al.*, Clin. Liver Dis.12:333-347 (2008) and Omenetti *et al.*, Laboratory Investigation 87:499-514 (2007) (biliary duct-ligated model); or any of a number of myelofibrosis mouse models such as described in Varicchio *et al.*, Expert Rev. Hematol. 2(3):315-334 (2009). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing scleroderma can be assessed using a mouse model induced by repeated local injections of bleomycin described, for example, in Yamamoto *et al.*, J. Invest. Dermatol. 112: 456-462 (1999). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing dermatomyositis can be assessed using a myositis mouse model induced by immunization with rabbit myosin as described, for example, in Phyanagi *et al.*, Arthritis & Rheumatism, 60(10): 3118-3127 (2009). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing lupus can be assessed using various animal models described, for example, in Ghoreishi *et al.*, Lupus, 19: 1029-1035 (2009); Ohl *et al.*, Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology, Article ID 432595 (2011); Xia *et al.*, Rheumatology, 50:2187-2196 (2011); Pau *et al.*, PLoS ONE, 7(5):e36761 (2012); Mustafa *et al.*, Toxicology, 290:156-168 (2011); Ichikawa *et al.*, Arthritis and Rheumatism, 62(2): 493-503 (2012); Ouyang *et al.*, J. Mol. Med.

(2012); Rankin *et al.*, Journal of Immunology, 188:1656-1667 (2012). Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing Sjögren's syndrome can be assessed using various mouse models described, for example, in Chiorini *et al.*, J. Autoimmunity, 33: 190-196 (2009).

[00228] To explore the role of PI3K signaling in diffuse large B-cell lymphoma ("DLBCL"), several DLBCL cell lines of varying molecular profiles may be utilized. In an exemplary embodiment, a cellular growth inhibition assay used five cell lines, including four GCB (SU-DHL-4, SU-DHL-6, OCI-LY-8 and WSU-DLCL-2) and one ABC (Ri-1) subtype. In an exemplary embodiment, a cellular growth inhibition assay used five cell lines that were OCI-LY-3, OCI-LY-7, Pfeiffer, Toledo and U2932. In an exemplary embodiment, evidence of PI3K pathway inhibition is measured by reduction in phospho (p)-AKT. In an exemplary embodiment, the kinetics of pathway modulation was characterized by examination of phosphorylation of AKT, PRAS40 and S6 following a time-course of treatment by a PI3K-inhibitor in selected cell lines. In one embodiment, upon B-cell receptor stimulation via antibody-induced crosslinking, some cell lines exhibited enhanced AKT phosphorylation.

[00229] In an exemplary embodiment, the combination effect of a PI3K inhibitor with a BTK inhibitor was observed in a cellular growth inhibition assay in the SU-DHL-4 cell line and in the OCI-LY-8 cell line with BCR crosslinking.

[00230] In one embodiment, provided herein is a method of treating, preventing and/or managing asthma. As used herein, "asthma" encompasses airway constriction regardless of the cause. Common triggers of asthma include, but are not limited to, exposure to an environmental stimulants (e.g., allergens), cold air, warm air, perfume, moist air, exercise or exertion, and emotional stress. Also provided herein is a method of treating, preventing and/or managing one or more symptoms associated with asthma. Examples of the symptoms include, but are not limited to, severe coughing, airway constriction and mucus production.

[00231] Described below are non-limiting exemplary pharmaceutical compositions and methods for preparing the same.

Pharmaceutical Compositions for Oral Administration

[00232] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for oral administration containing the combination of a PI3K and BTK inhibitor, and a pharmaceutical excipient suitable for oral administration.

[00233] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a solid pharmaceutical composition for oral administration containing: (i) an effective amount of each of a PI3K and BTK inhibitor in combination and (ii) a pharmaceutical excipient suitable for oral administration. In selected embodiments, the composition further contains (iii) an effective amount of a fourth compound.

[00234] In selected embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition may be a liquid pharmaceutical composition suitable for oral consumption. Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention suitable for oral administration can be presented as discrete dosage forms, such as capsules, cachets, or tablets, or liquids or aerosol sprays each containing a predetermined amount of an active ingredient as a powder or in granules, a solution, or a suspension in an aqueous or non-aqueous liquid, an oil-in-water emulsion, or a water-in-oil liquid emulsion. Such dosage forms can be prepared by any of the methods of pharmacy, but all methods include the step of bringing the active ingredient(s) into association with the carrier, which constitutes one or more necessary ingredients. In general, the compositions are prepared by uniformly and intimately admixing the active ingredient(s) with liquid carriers or finely divided solid carriers or both, and then, if necessary, shaping the product into the desired presentation. For example, a tablet can be prepared by compression or molding, optionally with one or more accessory ingredients. Compressed tablets can be prepared by compressing in a suitable machine the active ingredient in a free-flowing form such as powder or granules, optionally mixed with an excipient such as, but not limited to, a binder, a lubricant, an inert diluent, and/or a surface active or dispersing agent. Molded tablets can be made by molding in a suitable machine a mixture of the powdered compound moistened with an inert liquid diluent.

[00235] The invention further encompasses anhydrous pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms since water can facilitate the degradation of some compounds. For example, water may be added (*e.g.*, 5%) in the pharmaceutical arts as a means of simulating long-term storage in order to determine characteristics such as shelf-life or the stability of formulations over time.

Anhydrous pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms of the invention can be prepared using anhydrous or low moisture containing ingredients and low moisture or low humidity conditions. Pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms of the invention which contain lactose can be made anhydrous if substantial contact with moisture and/or humidity during manufacturing, packaging, and/or storage is expected. An anhydrous pharmaceutical composition may be prepared and stored such that its anhydrous nature is maintained.

Accordingly, anhydrous compositions may be packaged using materials known to prevent exposure to water such that they can be included in suitable formulary kits. Examples of suitable packaging include, but are not limited to, hermetically sealed foils, plastic or the like, unit dose containers, blister packs, and strip packs.

[00236] Each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors active ingredients can be combined in an intimate admixture with a pharmaceutical carrier according to conventional pharmaceutical compounding techniques. The carrier can take a wide variety of forms depending on the form of preparation desired for administration. In preparing the compositions for an oral dosage form, any of the usual pharmaceutical media can be employed as carriers, such as, for example, water, glycols, oils, alcohols, flavoring agents, preservatives, coloring agents, and the like in the case of oral liquid preparations (such as suspensions, solutions, and elixirs) or aerosols; or carriers such as starches, sugars, micro-crystalline cellulose, diluents, granulating agents, lubricants, binders, and disintegrating agents can be used in the case of oral solid preparations, in some embodiments without employing the use of lactose. For example, suitable carriers include powders, capsules, and tablets, with the solid oral preparations. If desired, tablets can be coated by standard aqueous or nonaqueous techniques.

[00237] Binders suitable for use in pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms include, but are not limited to, corn starch, potato starch, or other starches, gelatin, natural and synthetic gums such as acacia, sodium alginate, alginic acid, other alginates, powdered tragacanth, guar gum, cellulose and its derivatives (*e.g.*, ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, sodium carboxymethyl cellulose), polyvinyl pyrrolidone, methyl cellulose, pre-gelatinized starch, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose, and mixtures thereof.

[00238] Examples of suitable fillers for use in the pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms disclosed herein include, but are not limited to, talc, calcium carbonate (*e.g.*, granules or powder), microcrystalline cellulose, powdered cellulose, dextrates, kaolin, mannitol, silicic acid, sorbitol, starch, pre-gelatinized starch, and mixtures thereof.

[00239] Disintegrants may be used in the compositions of the invention to provide tablets that disintegrate when exposed to an aqueous environment. Too much of a disintegrant may produce tablets which disintegrate in the bottle. Too little may be insufficient for disintegration to occur, thus altering the rate and extent of release of the active ingredients from the dosage form. Thus, a sufficient amount of disintegrant that is neither too little nor too much to detrimentally alter the release of the active ingredient(s) may be used to form the dosage forms of the compounds disclosed herein. The amount of disintegrant used may vary based upon the type of formulation and mode of administration, and may be readily discernible to those of ordinary skill in the art. About 0.5 to about 15 weight percent of disintegrant, or about 1 to about 5 weight percent of disintegrant, may be used in the pharmaceutical composition. Disintegrants that can be used to form pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms of the invention include, but are not limited to, agar-agar, alginic acid, calcium carbonate, microcrystalline cellulose, croscarmellose sodium, crospovidone, polacrilin potassium, sodium starch glycolate, potato or tapioca starch, other starches, pre-gelatinized starch, other starches, clays, other algin, other celluloses, gums or mixtures thereof.

[00240] Lubricants which can be used to form pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms of the invention include, but are not limited to, calcium stearate, magnesium stearate, mineral oil, light mineral oil, glycerin, sorbitol, mannitol, polyethylene glycol, other glycols, stearic acid, sodium lauryl sulfate, talc, hydrogenated vegetable oil (*e.g.*, peanut oil, cottonseed oil, sunflower oil, sesame oil, olive oil, corn oil, and soybean oil), zinc stearate, ethyl oleate, ethyl laureate, agar, or mixtures thereof. Additional lubricants include, for example, a silica gel, a coagulated aerosol of synthetic silica, or mixtures thereof. A lubricant can optionally be added, in an amount of less than about 1 weight percent of the pharmaceutical composition.

[00241] When aqueous suspensions and/or elixirs are desired for oral administration, the essential active ingredient therein may be combined with various sweetening or flavoring agents,

coloring matter or dyes and, if so desired, emulsifying and/or suspending agents, together with such diluents as water, ethanol, propylene glycol, glycerin and various combinations thereof.

[00242] The tablets can be uncoated or coated by known techniques to delay disintegration and absorption in the gastrointestinal tract and thereby provide a sustained action over a longer period. For example, a time delay material such as glyceryl monostearate or glyceryl distearate can be employed. Formulations for oral use can also be presented as hard gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with an inert solid diluent, for example, calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate or kaolin, or as soft gelatin capsules wherein the active ingredient is mixed with water or an oil medium, for example, peanut oil, liquid paraffin or olive oil.

[00243] Surfactants which can be used to form pharmaceutical compositions and dosage forms of the invention include, but are not limited to, hydrophilic surfactants, lipophilic surfactants, and mixtures thereof. That is, a mixture of hydrophilic surfactants may be employed, a mixture of lipophilic surfactants may be employed, or a mixture of at least one hydrophilic surfactant and at least one lipophilic surfactant may be employed.

[00244] A suitable hydrophilic surfactant may generally have an HLB value of at least 10, while suitable lipophilic surfactants may generally have an HLB value of or less than about 10. An empirical parameter used to characterize the relative hydrophilicity and hydrophobicity of non-ionic amphiphilic compounds is the hydrophilic-lipophilic balance ("HLB" value). Surfactants with lower HLB values are more lipophilic or hydrophobic, and have greater solubility in oils, while surfactants with higher HLB values are more hydrophilic, and have greater solubility in aqueous solutions. Hydrophilic surfactants are generally considered to be those compounds having an HLB value greater than about 10, as well as anionic, cationic, or zwitterionic compounds for which the HLB scale is not generally applicable. Similarly, lipophilic (*i.e.*, hydrophobic) surfactants are compounds having an HLB value equal to or less than about 10. However, HLB value of a surfactant is merely a rough guide generally used to enable formulation of industrial, pharmaceutical and cosmetic emulsions.

[00245] Hydrophilic surfactants may be either ionic or non-ionic. Suitable ionic surfactants include, but are not limited to, alkylammonium salts; fusidic acid salts; fatty acid derivatives of amino acids, oligopeptides, and polypeptides; glyceride derivatives of amino acids,

oligopeptides, and polypeptides; lecithins and hydrogenated lecithins; lysolecithins and hydrogenated lysolecithins; phospholipids and derivatives thereof; lysophospholipids and derivatives thereof; carnitine fatty acid ester salts; salts of alkylsulfates; fatty acid salts; sodium docusate; acylactylates; mono- and di-acetylated tartaric acid esters of mono- and di-glycerides; succinylated mono- and di-glycerides; citric acid esters of mono- and di-glycerides; and mixtures thereof.

[00246] Within the aforementioned group, ionic surfactants include, by way of example: lecithins, lysolecithin, phospholipids, lysophospholipids and derivatives thereof; carnitine fatty acid ester salts; salts of alkylsulfates; fatty acid salts; sodium docusate; acylactylates; mono- and di-acetylated tartaric acid esters of mono- and di-glycerides; succinylated mono- and di-glycerides; citric acid esters of mono- and di-glycerides; and mixtures thereof.

[00247] Ionic surfactants may be the ionized forms of lecithin, lysolecithin, phosphatidylcholine, phosphatidylethanolamine, phosphatidylglycerol, phosphatidic acid, phosphatidylserine, lysophosphatidylcholine, lysophosphatidylethanolamine, lysophosphatidylglycerol, lysophosphatidic acid, lysophosphatidylserine, PEG-phosphatidylethanolamine, PVP-phosphatidylethanolamine, lactic esters of fatty acids, stearyl-2-lactylate, stearyl lactylate, succinylated monoglycerides, mono/diacetylated tartaric acid esters of mono/diglycerides, citric acid esters of mono/diglycerides, choly sarcosine, caproate, caprylate, caprate, laurate, myristate, palmitate, oleate, ricinoleate, linoleate, linolenate, stearate, lauryl sulfate, teracecyl sulfate, docusate, lauroyl carnitines, palmitoyl carnitines, myristoyl carnitines, and salts and mixtures thereof.

[00248] Hydrophilic non-ionic surfactants may include, but not limited to, alkylglucosides; alkylmaltosides; alkylthioglucosides; lauryl macrogolglycerides; polyoxyalkylene alkyl ethers such as polyethylene glycol alkyl ethers; polyoxyalkylene alkylphenols such as polyethylene glycol alkyl phenols; polyoxyalkylene alkyl phenol fatty acid esters such as polyethylene glycol fatty acids monoesters and polyethylene glycol fatty acids diesters; polyethylene glycol glycerol fatty acid esters; polyglycerol fatty acid esters; polyoxyalkylene sorbitan fatty acid esters such as polyethylene glycol sorbitan fatty acid esters; hydrophilic transesterification products of a polyol with at least one member of the group consisting of glycerides, vegetable oils, hydrogenated vegetable oils, fatty acids, and sterols; polyoxyethylenic sterols, derivatives, and analogues

thereof; polyoxyethylated vitamins and derivatives thereof; polyoxyethylene-polyoxypropylene block copolymers; and mixtures thereof; polyethylene glycol sorbitan fatty acid esters and hydrophilic transesterification products of a polyol with at least one member of the group consisting of triglycerides, vegetable oils, and hydrogenated vegetable oils. The polyol may be glycerol, ethylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, sorbitol, propylene glycol, pentaerythritol, or a saccharide.

[00249] Other hydrophilic-non-ionic surfactants include, without limitation, PEG-10 laurate, PEG-12 laurate, PEG-20 laurate, PEG-32 laurate, PEG-32 dilaurate, PEG-12 oleate, PEG-15 oleate, PEG-20 oleate, PEG-20 dioleate, PEG-32 oleate, PEG-200 oleate, PEG-400 oleate, PEG-15 stearate, PEG-32 distearate, PEG-40 stearate, PEG-100 stearate, PEG-20 dilaurate, PEG-25 glyceryl trioleate, PEG-32 dioleate, PEG-20 glyceryl laurate, PEG-30 glyceryl laurate, PEG-20 glyceryl stearate, PEG-20 glyceryl oleate, PEG-30 glyceryl oleate, PEG-30 glyceryl laurate, PEG-40 glyceryl laurate, PEG-40 palm kernel oil, PEG-50 hydrogenated castor oil, PEG-40 castor oil, PEG-35 castor oil, PEG-60 castor oil, PEG-40 hydrogenated castor oil, PEG-60 hydrogenated castor oil, PEG-60 corn oil, PEG-6 caprate/caprylate glycerides, PEG-8 caprate/caprylate glycerides, polyglyceryl-10 laurate, PEG-30 cholesterol, PEG-25 phyto sterol, PEG-30 soya sterol, PEG-20 trioleate, PEG-40 sorbitan oleate, PEG-80 sorbitan laurate, polysorbate 20, polysorbate 80, POE-9 lauryl ether, POE-23 lauryl ether, POE-10 oleyl ether, POE-20 oleyl ether, POE-20 stearyl ether, tocopheryl PEG-100 succinate, PEG-24 cholesterol, polyglyceryl-10oleate, Tween 40, Tween 60, sucrose monostearate, sucrose monolaurate, sucrose monopalmitate, PEG 10-100 nonyl phenol series, PEG 15-100 octyl phenol series, and poloxamers.

[00250] Suitable lipophilic surfactants include, by way of example only: fatty alcohols; glycerol fatty acid esters; acetylated glycerol fatty acid esters; lower alcohol fatty acids esters; propylene glycol fatty acid esters; sorbitan fatty acid esters; polyethylene glycol sorbitan fatty acid esters; sterols and sterol derivatives; polyoxyethylated sterols and sterol derivatives; polyethylene glycol alkyl ethers; sugar esters; sugar ethers; lactic acid derivatives of mono- and di-glycerides; hydrophobic transesterification products of a polyol with at least one member of the group consisting of glycerides, vegetable oils, hydrogenated vegetable oils, fatty acids and sterols; oil-soluble vitamins/vitamin derivatives; and mixtures thereof. Within this group, preferred

lipophilic surfactants include glycerol fatty acid esters, propylene glycol fatty acid esters, and mixtures thereof, or are hydrophobic transesterification products of a polyol with at least one member of the group consisting of vegetable oils, hydrogenated vegetable oils, and triglycerides.

[00251] In an exemplary embodiment, the composition may include a solubilizer to ensure good solubilization and/or dissolution of the compound of the present invention and to minimize precipitation of the compound of the present invention. This can be especially important for compositions for non-oral use - *e.g.*, compositions for injection. A solubilizer may also be added to increase the solubility of the hydrophilic drug and/or other components, such as surfactants, or to maintain the composition as a stable or homogeneous solution or dispersion.

[00252] Examples of suitable solubilizers include, but are not limited to, the following: alcohols and polyols, such as ethanol, isopropanol, butanol, benzyl alcohol, ethylene glycol, propylene glycol, butanediols and isomers thereof, glycerol, pentaerythritol, sorbitol, mannitol, transcitol, dimethyl isosorbide, polyethylene glycol, polypropylene glycol, polyvinylalcohol, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose and other cellulose derivatives, cyclodextrins and cyclodextrin derivatives; ethers of polyethylene glycols having an average molecular weight of about 200 to about 6000, such as tetrahydrofurfuryl alcohol PEG ether (glycofurol) or methoxy PEG; amides and other nitrogen-containing compounds such as 2-pyrrolidone, 2-piperidone, ϵ -caprolactam, N-alkylpyrrolidone, N-hydroxyalkylpyrrolidone, N-alkylpiperidone, N-alkylcaprolactam, dimethylacetamide and polyvinylpyrrolidone; esters such as ethyl propionate, tributylcitrate, acetyl triethylcitrate, acetyl tributyl citrate, triethylcitrate, ethyl oleate, ethyl caprylate, ethyl butyrate, triacetin, propylene glycol monoacetate, propylene glycol diacetate, ϵ -caprolactone and isomers thereof, δ -valerolactone and isomers thereof, β -butyrolactone and isomers thereof; and other solubilizers known in the art, such as dimethyl acetamide, dimethyl isosorbide, N-methyl pyrrolidones, mono-octanoin, diethylene glycol monoethyl ether, and water.

[00253] Mixtures of solubilizers may also be used. Examples include, but not limited to, triacetin, triethylcitrate, ethyl oleate, ethyl caprylate, dimethylacetamide, N-methylpyrrolidone, N-hydroxyethylpyrrolidone, polyvinylpyrrolidone, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, hydroxypropyl cyclodextrins, ethanol, polyethylene glycol 200-100, glycofurol, transcitol, propylene glycol, and dimethyl isosorbide. Particularly preferred solubilizers include sorbitol, glycerol, triacetin, ethyl alcohol, PEG-400, glycofurol and propylene glycol.

[00254] The amount of solubilizer that can be included is not particularly limited. The amount of a given solubilizer may be limited to a bioacceptable amount, which may be readily determined by one of skill in the art. In some circumstances, it may be advantageous to include amounts of solubilizers far in excess of bioacceptable amounts, for example to maximize the concentration of the drug, with excess solubilizer removed prior to providing the composition to a patient using conventional techniques, such as distillation or evaporation. Thus, if present, the solubilizer can be in a weight ratio of 10%, 25%, 50%, 100%, or up to about 200% by weight, based on the combined weight of the drug, and other excipients. If desired, very small amounts of solubilizer may also be used, such as 5%, 2%, 1% or even less. Typically, the solubilizer may be present in an amount of about 1% to about 100%, more typically about 5% to about 25% by weight.

[00255] The composition can further include one or more pharmaceutically acceptable additives and excipients. Such additives and excipients include, without limitation, detackifiers, anti-foaming agents, buffering agents, polymers, antioxidants, preservatives, chelating agents, viscomodulators, tonicifiers, flavorants, colorants, odorants, opacifiers, suspending agents, binders, fillers, plasticizers, lubricants, and mixtures thereof.

[00256] In addition, an acid or a base may be incorporated into the composition to facilitate processing, to enhance stability, or for other reasons. Examples of pharmaceutically acceptable bases include amino acids, amino acid esters, ammonium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydroxide, sodium hydrogen carbonate, aluminum hydroxide, calcium carbonate, magnesium hydroxide, magnesium aluminum silicate, synthetic aluminum silicate, synthetic hydrocalcite, magnesium aluminum hydroxide, diisopropylethylamine, ethanolamine, ethylenediamine, triethanolamine, triethylamine, triisopropanolamine, trimethylamine, tris(hydroxymethyl)aminomethane (TRIS) and the like. Also suitable are bases that are salts of a pharmaceutically acceptable acid, such as acetic acid, acrylic acid, adipic acid, alginic acid, alkanesulfonic acid, amino acids, ascorbic acid, benzoic acid, boric acid, butyric acid, carbonic acid, citric acid, fatty acids, formic acid, fumaric acid, gluconic acid, hydroquinosulfonic acid, isoascorbic acid, lactic acid, maleic acid, oxalic acid, para-bromophenylsulfonic acid, propionic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, salicylic acid, stearic acid, succinic acid, tannic acid, tartaric acid, thioglycolic acid, toluenesulfonic acid, uric acid, and the like. Salts of polyprotic acids, such as

sodium phosphate, disodium hydrogen phosphate, and sodium dihydrogen phosphate can also be used. When the base is a salt, the cation can be any convenient and pharmaceutically acceptable cation, such as ammonium, alkali metals and alkaline earth metals. Example may include, but not limited to, sodium, potassium, lithium, magnesium, calcium and ammonium.

[00257] Suitable acids are pharmaceutically acceptable organic or inorganic acids. Examples of suitable inorganic acids include hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, hydriodic acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, boric acid, phosphoric acid, and the like. Examples of suitable organic acids include acetic acid, acrylic acid, adipic acid, alginic acid, alkanesulfonic acids, amino acids, ascorbic acid, benzoic acid, boric acid, butyric acid, carbonic acid, citric acid, fatty acids, formic acid, fumaric acid, gluconic acid, hydroquinosulfonic acid, isoascorbic acid, lactic acid, maleic acid, methanesulfonic acid, oxalic acid, para-bromophenylsulfonic acid, propionic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, salicylic acid, stearic acid, succinic acid, tannic acid, tartaric acid, thioglycolic acid, toluenesulfonic acid and uric acid.

Pharmaceutical Compositions for Injection

[00258] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for injection containing the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors and a pharmaceutical excipient suitable for injection. Components and amounts of agents in the compositions are as described herein.

[00259] The forms in which the compositions of the present invention may be incorporated for administration by injection include aqueous or oil suspensions, or emulsions, with sesame oil, corn oil, cottonseed oil, or peanut oil, as well as elixirs, mannitol, dextrose, or a sterile aqueous solution, and similar pharmaceutical vehicles.

[00260] Aqueous solutions in saline are also conventionally used for injection. Ethanol, glycerol, propylene glycol and liquid polyethylene glycol (and suitable mixtures thereof), cyclodextrin derivatives, and vegetable oils may also be employed. The proper fluidity can be maintained, for example, by the use of a coating, such as lecithin, for the maintenance of the required particle size in the case of dispersion and by the use of surfactants. The prevention of the action of microorganisms can be brought about by various antibacterial and antifungal agents, for example, parabens, chlorobutanol, phenol, sorbic acid and thimerosal.

[00261] Sterile injectable solutions are prepared by incorporating the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors in the required amounts in the appropriate solvent with various other ingredients as enumerated above, as required, followed by filtered sterilization. Generally, dispersions are prepared by incorporating the various sterilized active ingredients into a sterile vehicle which contains the basic dispersion medium and the required other ingredients from those enumerated above. In the case of sterile powders for the preparation of sterile injectable solutions, certain desirable methods of preparation are vacuum-drying and freeze-drying techniques which yield a powder of the active ingredient plus any additional desired ingredient from a previously sterile-filtered solution thereof.

Pharmaceutical Compositions for Topical Delivery

[00262] In some embodiments, the invention provides a pharmaceutical composition for transdermal delivery containing the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors and a pharmaceutical excipient suitable for transdermal delivery.

[00263] Compositions of the present invention can be formulated into preparations in solid, semi-solid, or liquid forms suitable for local or topical administration, such as gels, water soluble jellies, creams, lotions, suspensions, foams, powders, slurries, ointments, solutions, oils, pastes, suppositories, sprays, emulsions, saline solutions, dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO)-based solutions. In general, carriers with higher densities are capable of providing an area with a prolonged exposure to the active ingredients. In contrast, a solution formulation may provide more immediate exposure of the active ingredient to the chosen area.

[00264] The pharmaceutical compositions also may comprise suitable solid or gel phase carriers or excipients, which are compounds that allow increased penetration of, or assist in the delivery of, therapeutic molecules across the stratum corneum permeability barrier of the skin. There are many of these penetration-enhancing molecules known to those trained in the art of topical formulation. Examples of such carriers and excipients include, but are not limited to, humectants (*e.g.*, urea), glycols (*e.g.*, propylene glycol), alcohols (*e.g.*, ethanol), fatty acids (*e.g.*, oleic acid), surfactants (*e.g.*, isopropyl myristate and sodium lauryl sulfate), pyrrolidones, glycerol monolaurate, sulfoxides, terpenes (*e.g.*, menthol), amines, amides, alkanes, alkanols, water,

calcium carbonate, calcium phosphate, various sugars, starches, cellulose derivatives, gelatin, and polymers such as polyethylene glycols.

[00265] Another exemplary formulation for use in the methods of the present invention employs transdermal delivery devices ("patches"). Such transdermal patches may be used to provide continuous or discontinuous infusion of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors in controlled amounts, either with or without another agent.

[00266] The construction and use of transdermal patches for the delivery of pharmaceutical agents is well known in the art. See, *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,023,252; 4,992,445 and 5,001,139. Such patches may be constructed for continuous, pulsatile, or on demand delivery of pharmaceutical agents.

Pharmaceutical Compositions for Inhalation

[00267] Compositions for inhalation or insufflation include solutions and suspensions in pharmaceutically acceptable, aqueous or organic solvents, or mixtures thereof, and powders. The liquid or solid compositions may contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable excipients as described supra. Preferably the compositions are administered by the oral or nasal respiratory route for local or systemic effect. Compositions in preferably pharmaceutically acceptable solvents may be nebulized by use of inert gases. Nebulized solutions may be inhaled directly from the nebulizing device or the nebulizing device may be attached to a face mask tent, or intermittent positive pressure breathing machine. Solution, suspension, or powder compositions may be administered, preferably orally or nasally, from devices that deliver the formulation in an appropriate manner.

Other Pharmaceutical Compositions

[00268] Pharmaceutical compositions may also be prepared from compositions described herein and one or more pharmaceutically acceptable excipients suitable for sublingual, buccal, rectal, intraosseous, intraocular, intranasal, epidural, or intraspinal administration. Preparations for such pharmaceutical compositions are well-known in the art. See, *e.g.*, Anderson, Philip O.; Knoben, James E.; Troutman, William G, eds., Handbook of Clinical Drug Data, Tenth Edition, McGraw-

Hill, 2002; and Pratt and Taylor, eds., Principles of Drug Action, Third Edition, Churchill Livingston, N.Y., 1990.

[00269] Administration of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors or pharmaceutical composition of these compounds can be effected by any method that enables delivery of the compounds to the site of action. These methods include oral routes, intraduodenal routes, parenteral injection (including intravenous, intraarterial, subcutaneous, intramuscular, intravascular, intraperitoneal or infusion), topical (*e.g.*, transdermal application), rectal administration, via local delivery by catheter or stent or through inhalation. The combination of compounds can also be administered intraadiposally or intrathecally.

[00270] The compositions of the invention may also be delivered via an impregnated or coated device such as a stent, for example, or an artery-inserted cylindrical polymer. Such a method of administration may, for example, aid in the prevention or amelioration of restenosis following procedures such as balloon angioplasty. Without being bound by theory, compounds of the invention may slow or inhibit the migration and proliferation of smooth muscle cells in the arterial wall which contribute to restenosis. A compound of the invention may be administered, for example, by local delivery from the struts of a stent, from a stent graft, from grafts, or from the cover or sheath of a stent. In some embodiments, a compound of the invention is admixed with a matrix. Such a matrix may be a polymeric matrix, and may serve to bond the compound to the stent. Polymeric matrices suitable for such use, include, for example, lactone-based polyesters or copolyesters such as polylactide, polycaprolactoneglycolide, polyorthoesters, polyanhydrides, polyaminoacids, polysaccharides, polyphosphazenes, poly(ether-ester) copolymers (*e.g.* PEO-PLLA); polydimethylsiloxane, poly(ethylene-vinylacetate), acrylate-based polymers or copolymers (*e.g.*, polyhydroxyethyl methylmethacrylate, polyvinyl pyrrolidinone), fluorinated polymers such as polytetrafluoroethylene and cellulose esters. Suitable matrices may be nondegrading or may degrade with time, releasing the compound or compounds. The combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors may be applied to the surface of the stent by various methods such as dip/spin coating, spray coating, dip-coating, and/or brush-coating. The compounds may be applied in a solvent and the solvent may be allowed to evaporate, thus forming a layer of compound onto the stent. Alternatively, the compound may be located in the body of the stent or graft, for example in microchannels or micropores. When implanted, the

compound diffuses out of the body of the stent to contact the arterial wall. Such stents may be prepared by dipping a stent manufactured to contain such micropores or microchannels into a solution of the compound of the invention in a suitable solvent, followed by evaporation of the solvent. Excess drug on the surface of the stent may be removed via an additional brief solvent wash. In yet other embodiments, compounds of the invention may be covalently linked to a stent or graft. A covalent linker may be used which degrades *in vivo*, leading to the release of the compound of the invention. Any bio-labile linkage may be used for such a purpose, such as ester, amide or anhydride linkages. The combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors may additionally be administered intravascularly from a balloon used during angioplasty. Extravascular administration of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors via the pericard or via advential application of formulations of the invention may also be performed to decrease restenosis.

[00271] Exemplary parenteral administration forms include solutions or suspensions of active compound in sterile aqueous solutions, for example, aqueous propylene glycol or dextrose solutions. Such dosage forms can be suitably buffered, if desired.

[00272] The invention also provides kits. The kits include each of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors, either alone or in combination in suitable packaging, and written material that can include instructions for use, discussion of clinical studies and listing of side effects. Such kits may also include information, such as scientific literature references, package insert materials, clinical trial results, and/or summaries of these and the like, which indicate or establish the activities and/or advantages of the composition, and/or which describe dosing, administration, side effects, drug interactions, or other information useful to the health care provider. Such information may be based on the results of various studies, for example, studies using experimental animals involving *in vivo* models and studies based on human clinical trials. The kit may further contain another agent. In selected embodiments, the PI3K and BTK inhibitors and the agent are provided as separate compositions in separate containers within the kit. In selected embodiments, the PI3K and BTK inhibitors and the agent are provided as a single composition within a container in the kit. Suitable packaging and additional articles for use (*e.g.*, measuring cup for liquid preparations, foil wrapping to minimize exposure to air, and the like) are known in the art and may be included in the kit. Kits described herein can be provided, marketed and/or promoted to

health providers, including physicians, nurses, pharmacists, formulary officials, and the like. Kits may also, in selected embodiments, be marketed directly to the consumer.

Dosages and Dosing Regimens

[00273] The amounts of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors administered will be dependent on the mammal being treated, the severity of the disorder or condition, the rate of administration, the disposition of the compounds and the discretion of the prescribing physician. However, an effective dosage of a PI3K or a BTK inhibitor is in the range of about 0.001 to about 100 mg per kg body weight per day, such as about 1 to about 35 mg/kg/day, in single or divided doses. For a 70 kg human, this would amount to about 0.05 to 7 g/day, such as about 0.05 to about 2.5 g/day. In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, is in the range of about 1 mg to about 300 mg, about 10 mg to about 250 mg, about 20 mg to about 225 mg, about 25 mg to about 200 mg, about 10 mg to about 200 mg, about 20 mg to about 150 mg, about 30 mg to about 120 mg, about 10 mg to about 90 mg, about 20 mg to about 80 mg, about 30 mg to about 70 mg, about 40 mg to about 60 mg, about 45 mg to about 55 mg, about 48 mg to about 52 mg, about 50 mg to about 150 mg, about 60 mg to about 140 mg, about 70 mg to about 130 mg, about 80 mg to about 120 mg, about 90 mg to about 110 mg, about 95 mg to about 105 mg, about 150 mg to about 250 mg, about 160 mg to about 240 mg, about 170 mg to about 230 mg, about 180 mg to about 220 mg, about 190 mg to about 210 mg, about 195 mg to about 205 mg, or about 198 to about 202 mg. In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, is about 25 mg, about 50 mg, about 75 mg, about 100 mg, about 125 mg, about 150 mg, about 175 mg, about 200 mg, about 225 mg, or about 250 mg. In some embodiments a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or administered in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, in a single dose, while in other embodiments a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, b.i.d. (twice a day).

[00274] In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, is in the range of about 0.01 mg/kg to about 4.3 mg/kg, about 0.15 mg/kg to about 3.6 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg/kg to about 3.2 mg/kg, about 0.35 mg/kg to about 2.85 mg/kg, about 0.15 mg/kg to about 2.85 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg to

about 2.15 mg/kg, about 0.45 mg/kg to about 1.7 mg/kg, about 0.15 mg/kg to about 1.3 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg/kg to about 1.15 mg/kg, about 0.45 mg/kg to about 1 mg/kg, about 0.55 mg/kg to about 0.85 mg/kg, about 0.65 mg/kg to about 0.8 mg/kg, about 0.7 mg/kg to about 0.75 mg/kg, about 0.7 mg/kg to about 2.15 mg/kg, about 0.85 mg/kg to about 2 mg/kg, about 1 mg/kg to about 1.85 mg/kg, about 1.15 mg/kg to about 1.7 mg/kg, about 1.3 mg/kg to about 1.6 mg/kg, about 1.35 mg/kg to about 1.5 mg/kg, about 2.15 mg/kg to about 3.6 mg/kg, about 2.3 mg/kg to about 3.4 mg/kg, about 2.4 mg/kg to about 3.3 mg/kg, about 2.6 mg/kg to about 3.15 mg/kg, about 2.7 mg/kg to about 3 mg/kg, about 2.8 mg/kg to about 3 mg/kg, or about 2.85 mg/kg to about 2.95 mg/kg. In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, is about 0.35 mg/kg, about 0.7 mg/kg, about 1 mg/kg, about 1.4 mg/kg, about 1.8 mg/kg, about 2.1 mg/kg, about 2.5 mg/kg, about 2.85 mg/kg, about 3.2 mg/kg, or about 3.6 mg/kg. In some embodiments a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, in a single dose, while in other embodiments a BTK inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a PI3K inhibitor, b.i.d. (twice a day).

[00275] In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a BTK inhibitor, is in the range of about 1 mg to about 300 mg, about 10 mg to about 250 mg, about 20 mg to about 225 mg, about 25 mg to about 200 mg, about 1 mg to about 50 mg, about 5 mg to about 45 mg, about 10 mg to about 40 mg, about 15 mg to about 35 mg, about 20 mg to about 30 mg, about 23 mg to about 28 mg, about 50 mg to about 150 mg, about 60 mg to about 140 mg, about 70 mg to about 130 mg, about 80 mg to about 120 mg, about 90 mg to about 110 mg, or about 95 mg to about 105 mg, about 98 mg to about 102 mg, about 150 mg to about 250 mg, about 160 mg to about 240 mg, about 170 mg to about 230 mg, about 180 mg to about 220 mg, about 190 mg to about 210 mg, about 195 mg to about 205 mg, or about 198 to about 207 mg. In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a BTK inhibitor, is about 25 mg, about 50 mg, about 75 mg, about 100 mg, about 125 mg, about 150 mg, about 175 mg, about 200 mg, about 225 mg, or about 250 mg. In some embodiments the PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a BTK inhibitor, in a single dose, while in other embodiments a PI3K inhibitor

disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a BTK inhibitor, b.i.d. (twice a day).

[00276] In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a BTK inhibitor, is in the range of about 0.01 mg/kg to about 4.3 mg/kg, about 0.15 mg/kg to about 3.6 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg/kg to about 3.2 mg/kg, about 0.35 mg/kg to about 2.85 mg/kg, about 0.01 mg/kg to about 0.7 mg/kg, about 0.07 mg/kg to about 0.65 mg/kg, about 0.15 mg/kg to about 0.6 mg/kg, about 0.2 mg/kg to about 0.5 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg/kg to about 0.45 mg/kg, about 0.3 mg/kg to about 0.4 mg/kg, about 0.7 mg/kg to about 2.15 mg/kg, about 0.85 mg/kg to about 2 mg/kg, about 1 mg/kg to about 1.85 mg/kg, about 1.15 mg/kg to about 1.7 mg/kg, about 1.3 mg/kg to about 1.6 mg/kg, about 1.35 mg/kg to about 1.5 mg/kg, about 1.4 mg/kg to about 1.45 mg/kg, about 2.15 mg/kg to about 3.6 mg/kg, about 2.3 mg/kg to about 3.4 mg/kg, about 2.4 mg/kg to about 3.3 mg/kg, about 2.6 mg/kg to about 3.15 mg/kg, about 2.7 mg/kg to about 3 mg/kg, about 2.8 mg/kg to about 3 mg/kg, or about 2.85 mg/kg to about 2.95 mg/kg. In some embodiments, an effective dosage of a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, either alone or administered in combination with a BTK inhibitor, is about 0.4 mg/kg, about 0.7 mg/kg, about 1 mg/kg, about 1.4 mg/kg, about 1.8 mg/kg, about 2.1 mg/kg, about 2.5 mg/kg, about 2.85 mg/kg, about 3.2 mg/kg, or about 3.6 mg/kg. In some embodiments a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a BTK inhibitor, in a single dose, while in other embodiments a PI3K inhibitor disclosed herein, is administered either alone or in combination with a BTK inhibitor, b.i.d. (twice a day).

[00277] In some embodiments, 10 to 200 mg BID including 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100 or 150 mg BID, for the BTK inhibitor, and 10 to 300 mg BID including 25, 50, 75, 100, 150 or 200 mg BID for the PI3K inhibitor. In some instances, dosage levels below the lower limit of the aforesaid range may be more than adequate, while in other cases still larger doses may be employed without causing any harmful side effect - *e.g.*, by dividing such larger doses into several small doses for administration throughout the day.

[00278] In selected embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered in a single dose. In selected embodiments, such administration will be by injection - *e.g.*, intravenous injection, in order to introduce the agents quickly. However, other routes may

be used as appropriate. A single dose of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors may also be used for treatment of an acute condition.

[00279] In selected embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered in multiple doses. Dosing may be about once, twice, three times, four times, five times, six times, or more than six times per day. Dosing may be about once a month, once every two weeks, once a week, or once every other day. In other embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered about once per day to about 6 times per day. In another embodiment the administration of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors continues for less than about 7 days. In yet another embodiment the administration continues for more than about 6, 10, 14, 28 days, two months, six months, or one year. In some cases, continuous dosing is achieved and maintained as long as necessary.

[00280] Administration of the agents of the invention may continue as long as necessary. In selected embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered for more than 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 14, or 28 days. In some embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered for less than 28, 14, 7, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, or 1 day. In selected embodiments, the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors is administered chronically on an ongoing basis - *e.g.*, for the treatment of chronic effects.

[00281] An effective amount of the combination of the PI3K and BTK inhibitors may be administered in either single or multiple doses by any of the accepted modes of administration of agents having similar utilities, including rectal, buccal, intranasal and transdermal routes, by intra-arterial injection, intravenously, intraperitoneally, parenterally, intramuscularly, subcutaneously, orally, topically, or as an inhalant.

Methods of Treatment

[00282] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a hyperproliferative disorder in a mammal that comprises administering to said mammal a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K inhibitor (or a PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, or PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor) and BTK inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester, prodrug, solvate or hydrate of either or both the PI3K inhibitor (or a PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, or PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor) or the BTK inhibitor. In selected embodiments, the method relates to the

treatment of cancer such as non-Hodgkin's lymphomas (such as diffuse large B-cell lymphoma), acute myeloid leukemia, thymus, brain, lung, squamous cell, skin, eye, retinoblastoma, intraocular melanoma, oral cavity and oropharyngeal, bladder, gastric, stomach, pancreatic, bladder, breast, cervical, head, neck, renal, kidney, liver, ovarian, prostate, colorectal, bone (*e.g.*, metastatic bone), esophageal, testicular, gynecological, thyroid, CNS, PNS, AIDS-related (*e.g.* lymphoma and Kaposi's sarcoma), viral-induced cancers such as cervical carcinoma (human papillomavirus), B-cell lymphoproliferative disease and nasopharyngeal carcinoma (Epstein-Barr virus), Kaposi's Sarcoma and primary effusion lymphomas (Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus), hepatocellular carcinoma (hepatitis B and hepatitis C viruses), and T-cell leukemias (Human T-cell leukemia virus-1), and T-cell leukemias (Human T-cell leukemia virus-1), B cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia, Burkitt's leukemia, juvenile myelomonocytic leukemia, hairy cell leukemia, Hodgkin's disease, multiple myeloma, mast cell leukemia, or mastocytosis. In selected embodiments, the method relates to the treatment of a non-cancerous hyperproliferative disorder such as benign hyperplasia of the skin (*e.g.*, psoriasis), restenosis, or prostate conditions (*e.g.*, benign prostatic hypertrophy (BPH)).

[00283] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating an inflammatory, immune, or autoimmune disorder in a mammal that comprises administering to said mammal a therapeutically effective amount of a PI3K inhibitor (or a PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, or PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor) and BTK inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt or ester, prodrug, solvate or hydrate of either or both the PI3K inhibitor (or a PI3K- γ inhibitor, PI3K- δ inhibitor, or PI3K- γ,δ inhibitor) or the BTK inhibitor. In selected embodiments, the invention also provides a method of treating a disease selected from the group consisting of tumor angiogenesis, chronic inflammatory disease, rheumatoid arthritis, atherosclerosis, inflammatory bowel disease, skin diseases such as psoriasis, eczema, and scleroderma, diabetes, diabetic retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity, age-related macular degeneration, hemangioma, glioma and melanoma, ulcerative colitis, atopic dermatitis, pouchitis, spondylarthritis, uveitis, Behcets disease, polymyalgia rheumatica, giant-cell arteritis, sarcoidosis, Kawasaki disease, juvenile idiopathic arthritis, hidratenitis suppurativa, Sjögren's syndrome, psoriatic arthritis, juvenile rheumatoid arthritis, ankylosing spondylitis, Crohn's Disease, lupus, and lupus nephritis.

[00284] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a solid tumor

cancer with a composition including a combination of a PI3K inhibitor, including a PI3K- γ or PI3K- δ inhibitor, and a BTK inhibitor, wherein the dose is effective to inhibit signaling between the solid tumor cells and at least one microenvironment selected from the group consisting of macrophages, monocytes, mast cells, helper T cells, cytotoxic T cells, regulatory T cells, natural killer cells, myeloid-derived suppressor cells, regulatory B cells, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and fibroblasts. In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating pancreatic cancer, breast cancer, ovarian cancer, melanoma, lung cancer, head and neck cancer, and colorectal cancer using a combination of a BTK inhibitor and a PI3K inhibitor, wherein the dose is effective to inhibit signaling between the solid tumor cells and at least one microenvironment selected from the group consisting of macrophages, monocytes, mast cells, helper T cells, cytotoxic T cells, regulatory T cells, natural killer cells, myeloid-derived suppressor cells, regulatory B cells, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and fibroblasts. Efficacy of the compounds and combinations of compounds described herein in treating, preventing and/or managing the indicated diseases or disorders can be tested using various models known in the art. For example, models for determining efficacy of treatments for pancreatic cancer are described in Herreros-Villanueva, et al. *World J. Gastroenterol.* **2012**, *18*, 1286-1294. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for breast cancer are described e.g. in A. Fantozzi, *Breast Cancer Res.* **2006**, *8*, 212. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for ovarian cancer are described e.g. in Mullany et al., *Endocrinology* **2012**, *153*, 1585-92; and Fong et al., *J. Ovarian Res.* **2009**, *2*, 12. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for melanoma are described e.g. in Damsky et al., *Pigment Cell & Melanoma Res.* **2010**, *23*, 853-859. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for lung cancer are described e.g. in Meuwissen et al., *Genes & Development*, **2005**, *19*, 643-664. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for lung cancer are described e.g. in Kim, *Clin. Exp. Otorhinolaryngol.* **2009**, *2*, 55-60; and Sano, *Head Neck Oncol.* **2009**, *1*, 32. Models for determining efficacy of treatments for colorectal cancer, including the CT26 model, are described below in the examples.

[00285] Efficacy of the compounds and combinations of compounds described herein in treating, preventing and/or managing other indicated diseases or disorders described here can also be tested using various models known in the art. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing asthma can be assessed using the ova induced asthma model described, for example, in Lee et al., *J. Allergy Clin. Immunol.* **2006**, *118*, 403-9. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or

managing arthritis (e.g., rheumatoid or psoriatic arthritis) can be assessed using the autoimmune animal models described in, for example, Williams et al., *Chem. Biol.* **2010**, *17*, 123-34, WO 2009/088986, WO 2009/088880, and WO 2011/008302. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing psoriasis can be assessed using transgenic or knockout mouse model with targeted mutations in epidermis, vasculature or immune cells, mouse model resulting from spontaneous mutations, and immuno-deficient mouse model with xenotransplantation of human skin or immune cells, all of which are described, for example, in Boehncke et al., *Clinics in Dermatology*, **2007**, *25*, 596-605. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing fibrosis or fibrotic conditions can be assessed using the unilateral ureteral obstruction model of renal fibrosis, which is described, for example, in Chevalier et al., *Kidney International* **2009**, *75*, 1145-1152; the bleomycin induced model of pulmonary fibrosis described in, for example, Moore et al., *Am. J. Physiol. Lung. Cell. Mol. Physiol.* **2008**, *294*, L152-L160; a variety of liver/biliary fibrosis models described in, for example, Chuang et al., *Clin. Liver Dis.* **2008**, *12*, 333-347 and Omenetti et al., *Laboratory Investigation*, **2007**, *87*, 499-514 (biliary duct-ligated model); or any of a number of myelofibrosis mouse models such as described in Varicchio et al., *Expert Rev. Hematol.* **2009**, *2*, 315-334. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing scleroderma can be assessed using a mouse model induced by repeated local injections of bleomycin described, for example, in Yamamoto et al., *J. Invest. Dermatol.* **1999**, *112*, 456-462. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing dermatomyositis can be assessed using a myositis mouse model induced by immunization with rabbit myosin as described, for example, in Phyanagi et al., *Arthritis & Rheumatism*, **2009**, *60(10)*, 3118-3127. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing lupus can be assessed using various animal models described, for example, in Ghoreishi et al., *Lupus*, **2009**, *19*, 1029-1035; Ohl et al., *J. Biomed. & Biotechnol.*, Article ID 432595 (2011); Xia et al., *Rheumatology*, **2011**, *50*, 2187-2196; Pau et al., *PLoS ONE*, **2012**, *7(5)*, e36761; Mustafa et al., *Toxicology*, **2011**, *90*, 156-168; Ichikawa et al., *Arthritis & Rheumatism*, **2012**, *62(2)*, 493-503; Rankin et al., *J. Immunology*, **2012**, *188*, 1656-1667. Efficacy in treating, preventing and/or managing Sjögren's syndrome can be assessed using various mouse models described, for example, in Chiorini et al., *J. Autoimmunity*, **2009**, *33*, 190-196.

[00286] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a

therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof. In a preferred embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is Formula (XVIII), or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof. In a preferred embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is Formula (XVIII), or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anticoagulant or antiplatelet agent.

[00287] In a preferred embodiment, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is Formula (XVIII), or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof, further comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of an anticoagulant or antiplatelet agent, wherein the anticoagulant or antiplatelet agent is selected from the group consisting of clopidogrel, prasugrel, ticagrelor, ticlopidine, warfarin, acenocoumarol, dicumarol, phenprocoumon, heparin, low molecular weight heparin, fondaparinux, and idraparinux.

[00288] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is Formula (XVIII), and wherein the cancer is selected from the group consisting of bladder cancer, squamous cell carcinoma including head and neck cancer, pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDA), pancreatic cancer, colon carcinoma, mammary carcinoma, breast cancer, fibrosarcoma, mesothelioma, renal cell carcinoma, lung carcinoma, thymoma, prostate cancer, colorectal cancer, ovarian cancer, acute myeloid leukemia, thymus cancer, brain cancer, squamous cell cancer, skin cancer, eye cancer, retinoblastoma, melanoma, intraocular melanoma, oral cavity and oropharyngeal cancers, gastric cancer, stomach cancer, cervical cancer, head, neck, renal cancer, kidney cancer, liver cancer, ovarian cancer, prostate cancer, colorectal cancer, esophageal cancer, testicular cancer, gynecological cancer, thyroid cancer, acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)-related

cancers (e.g., lymphoma and Kaposi's sarcoma), viral-induced cancer, glioblastoma, esophageal tumors, hematological neoplasms, non-small-cell lung cancer, chronic myelocytic leukemia, diffuse large B-cell lymphoma, esophagus tumor, follicle center lymphoma, head and neck tumor, hepatitis C virus infection, hepatocellular carcinoma, Hodgkin's disease, metastatic colon cancer, multiple myeloma, non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, indolent non-Hogkin's lymphoma, ovary tumor, pancreas tumor, renal cell carcinoma, small-cell lung cancer, stage IV melanoma, chronic lymphocytic leukemia, B-cell acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL), mature B-cell ALL, follicular lymphoma, mantle cell lymphoma, and Burkitt's lymphoma.

[00289] In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human with a history of thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof. In selected embodiments, the invention provides a method of treating a cancer in a human sensitive to platelet-mediated thrombosis, method of treating a cancer in a human with a history of thrombosis, comprising the step of administering a therapeutically effective dose of a BTK inhibitor, wherein the BTK inhibitor is a compound of Formula (XVIII) or a pharmaceutically-acceptable salt, cocrystal, hydrate, solvate, or prodrug thereof.

[00290] In selected embodiments, the BTK inhibitor and the anticoagulant or the antiplatelet agent are administered sequentially. In selected embodiments, the BTK inhibitor and the anticoagulant or the antiplatelet agent are administered concomitantly. In selected embodiments, the BTK inhibitor is administered before the anticoagulant or the antiplatelet agent. In selected embodiments, the BTK inhibitor is administered after the anticoagulant or the antiplatelet agent.

[00291] Preferred anti-platelet and anticoagulant agents for use in the methods of the present invention include, but are not limited to, cyclooxygenase inhibitors (e.g., aspirin), adenosine diphosphate (ADP) receptor inhibitors (e.g., clopidogrel and ticlopidine), phosphodiesterase inhibitors (e.g., cilostazol), glycoprotein IIb/IIIa inhibitors (e.g., abciximab, eptifibatide, and tirofiban), adenosine reuptake inhibitors (e.g., dipyridamole), and acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin). In other embodiments, examples of anti-platelet agents for use in the methods of the present invention include anagrelide, aspirin/extended-release dipyridamole, cilostazol,

clopidogrel, dipyridamole, prasugrel, ticagrelor, ticlopidine, vorapaxar, tirofiban HCl, eptifibatide, abciximab, argatroban, bivalirudin, dalteparin, desirudin, enoxaparin, fondaparinux, heparin, lepirudin, apixaban, dabigatran etexilate mesylate, rivaroxaban, and warfarin.

Combinations of PI3K and BTK Inhibitors

[00292] Non-limiting, exemplary embodiments of combinations of the PI3K inhibitors and BTK inhibitors described above are given in the following numbered paragraphs 1 to 50. The disclosure encompassed herein should in no way be construed as being limited to these examples, but rather should be construed to encompass any and all variations which become evident as a result of the teachings provided herein.

[00293] In an embodiment, the PI3K inhibitor and BTK inhibitor are provided in a PI3K inhibitor to BTK inhibitor ratio (by mass) selected from the group consisting of 0.01 to 1, 0.05 to 1, 0.1 to 1, 0.5 to 1, 1 to 1, 2 to 1, 5 to 1, 10 to 1, 20 to 1, and 100 to 1.

[00294] While preferred embodiments of the invention are shown and described herein, including the above embodiments, such embodiments are provided by way of example only and are not intended to otherwise limit the scope of the invention. Various alternatives to the described embodiments of the invention may be employed in practicing the invention.

EXAMPLES

[00295] The embodiments encompassed herein are now described with reference to the following examples. These examples are provided for the purpose of illustration only and the disclosure encompassed herein should in no way be construed as being limited to these examples, but rather should be construed to encompass any and all variations which become evident as a result of the teachings provided herein.

Example 1 – Synergistic Combination of a BTK inhibitor and a PI3K- δ inhibitor

[00296] Ficoll purified mantle cell lymphoma (MCL) cells (2×10^5) isolated from bone marrow or peripheral blood were treated with each drug alone and with six equimolar concentrations of a BTK inhibitor (Formula XVIII) and a PI3K- δ inhibitor (Formula IX) ranging from 0.01 nM to 10 μ M on 96-well plates in triplicate. Plated cells were then cultured in HS-5 conditioned media at